

# 1 The ties that bind

## VOCABULARY

1.1

Personality and relationships  
• adjectives • collocations • phrases

### SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

- 1 Complete the letter with the words from the box. There are three extra words.

(depend fall feel get grow  
live look (x2) put take)

#### HOW MOVING ABROAD TRANSFORMED MY FAMILY

Two years ago, my parents announced that we were moving to North Africa, where they had both accepted research jobs. Of course my sister and I were worried. We would be leaving friends, school and everything familiar behind. But because we looked up to and admired our parents, we tried to be enthusiastic. I know now that this move was the best thing that ever happened to our family. In the UK, my sister and I were pretty distant, but after moving we began to <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ on each other more. We also learned to <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ on together much better instead of arguing, and we began to <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ after each other in stressful situations. This has helped both of us to <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ up and act less like dependent children.

Another change is that our parents became more relaxed about our social lives and academic achievements. In the UK, they did not want us to <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ up with classmates who were not serious about school, and it was hard to <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ up to their high expectations. Now they are happy to see us making all kinds of new friends, and this has brought us much closer together as a family.

- 2 Complete the sentences with the correct prepositions.

Thrust into power by the untimely death of his father, the young Emperor was required to grow up overnight.

- Of course, the monarchy has to put \_\_\_\_\_ with intrusions into its private affairs; that's the price of privilege.
- Although my cousin and her fiancé split \_\_\_\_\_ last month, they made it up and we're going to their wedding this summer.
- It took my grandmother ages to agree to go \_\_\_\_\_ with my grandfather.
- Our teacher has fallen \_\_\_\_\_ with Mrs Bayram over her son's behaviour.
- In his generosity, Mr Perez takes \_\_\_\_\_ his much-admired grandfather.

### WORD STORE 1A | Personality adjectives

- 3 Complete Lena's message with the correct forms of the words in brackets.

Maggie,

Although I'm reluctant to admit it, I think our friendship is over. Ever since you started hanging out with 'you-know-who', you've gone from down-to-earth (down-to-earth) and <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (consider) to selfish and <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (obstinacy). Probably because of her and the other 'populars' you now spend all your time with, you've become two-faced and no longer <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (faith) to your former friends. I used to regard you as one of the <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (sharp) girls in our year and to admire your <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (prejudice) attitude towards others, but these days you seem to have lost that accepting side and become completely <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (reverence) towards anyone who doesn't look, speak and dress the same as you and your new 'best friends'. You've changed, and I miss my old friend. Have a nice life.

Lena

### WORD STORE 1B | Collocations

- 4 Complete the sentences. The first letters are given.

Peter wanted to take a break, but his iron will prevented him from joining the others outside.

- Despite its d \_\_\_\_\_ s \_\_\_\_\_, the pygmy marmoset, the world's smallest monkey at just eleven to fifteen centimetres long, can leap up to five metres between branches.
- Soldiers of the time s \_\_\_\_\_ many h \_\_\_\_\_ including intense hunger and long periods without sleep.
- Don't be fooled by the elephant's u \_\_\_\_\_ m \_\_\_\_\_. It will attack if it feels threatened.
- Julia's floral perfume c \_\_\_\_\_ up m \_\_\_\_\_ of his mother, which made him think of home.
- The Queen n \_\_\_\_\_ in a \_\_\_\_\_ at the consul's suggestion.
- My favourite part of the festival is the never-ending supply of h \_\_\_\_\_ b \_\_\_\_\_ treats.
- Only six more months of mopping floors and you could be promoted to the d \_\_\_\_\_ h \_\_\_\_\_ of hygiene supervisor.

### WORD STORE 1C | EXTRA Collocations

- 5 Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.

- Meditation often helps troubled patients to put / blot / nod out dark memories.
- Mike took his brother to dinner as a birthday party / invitation / treat, but forgot his wallet.
- Clifford is huge, but his imposing / irreverent / unassuming stature hides a chronic shyness.
- A controversial new study has suggested that free / thoughtful / flexible will is actually an illusion.
- Animals living at such altitudes do / face / meet great hardships during the winter months.
- After reaching the eager / lofty / respectful heights of amateur league four, the team fell apart when five of the players went off to university.
- Membership applications require approval / approving / accept from the site moderator.
- The president's forthright habit / manner / memory can make diplomacy difficult.

### WORD STORE 1D | Common phrases

- 6 Complete each pair of sentences with the same word.

- If the mangoes are green and hard, you can be sure that they are not ripe yet.
  - At the ripe old age of eighty-six, Bert is the oldest in the race.
- Everyone makes mistakes but by lying about it, you've let yourself \_\_\_\_\_ and upset your parents.
    - No more excuses. I'm putting my foot \_\_\_\_\_ . Hand in your essay tomorrow or fail the class.
  - Welcome to Wimbledon. Today, Williams and Wang \_\_\_\_\_ each other in the women's semi-finals.
    - Cindy was terrified of thunder but she put on a brave \_\_\_\_\_ in front of her little brother.
  - His mother only sees the \_\_\_\_\_ in him. She doesn't realise how difficult he can be.
    - I think it would be for the \_\_\_\_\_ if you had an early night. The exam starts at 8 a.m.
  - Whether we get there depends \_\_\_\_\_ the traffic.
    - Stop complaining and get \_\_\_\_\_ with cutting the lawn.
  - With the accident and then the robbery, Scott has had more than his \_\_\_\_\_ share of bad luck recently.
    - \_\_\_\_\_ -skinned visitors in particular should use cream as the walking route offers little shade.
  - Despite the cost of the graduation dinner, Oliver's proud parents didn't bat an \_\_\_\_\_ when the bill arrived.
    - It was Fiona's first attempt at doing her make up and most of the mascara ended up on her upper \_\_\_\_\_ rather than on her eyelashes.

### SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

- 7 Complete the dialogue with the words from the box. There are two extra words.

(best brave earth fair nodding  
respectful share sharp)

- M: Adele, we met your brother's girlfriend last night. They work together, you know? They came over for dinner.  
A: Finally! And?  
M: Very nice. For someone so successful, she was very down-to-earth. Your father liked her.  
A: Did he?  
M: Instantly. She listened to more than her fair <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ of train spotting stories and managed to appear genuinely eager to hear about the 1987 cup final.  
A: Ha! I'm sure she was just putting on a <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ face, but it sounds like she scored some points at least.  
M: Oh, absolutely. By the time we got to dessert, your father was <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ in approval at all she said.  
A: Clever girl. Very <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_. Get in with the father and everything will be OK.  
M: Oh really? And, what about the mother?  
A: Oh, Mum. You never have a bad word to say about anyone anyway. She could be a complete dropout and you'd still see the <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ in her.

- 8 Correct the mistakes.

The minister's comments were unrespectful to the people of the North. disrespectful

- Revisiting the village after so long conjured so many childhood memories. \_\_\_\_\_
- After six months of backbreaking work, Henry reached the lofting heights of assistant box carrier. \_\_\_\_\_
- At the ripe old year of ninety-four, Edna is the oldest skydiver we've ever met. \_\_\_\_\_
- Those who are faithless to the King will be suitably rewarded. \_\_\_\_\_
- Those students wishing to go on the school trip require the written approvemement of their parents. \_\_\_\_\_

/10





## READING

1.2

Proverbs • verbs • collocations  
• word pairs • prepositions

## WISE WORDS

**A** Every nation has its own proverbs which are repeated across the generations in order to pass on advice about the basic truths of life. In Germany, it is said that 'a country can be judged by the quality of its proverbs', while an Arabic saying suggests that 'a proverb is to speech what salt is to food'. In my view, a well-chosen proverb used at the right time can flavour a person's communication with wit and wisdom, but, to continue the Arabs' dinner-table analogy, it is important not to 'over-season' the meal. Speech or writing peppered with proverbs soon begins to sound patronising and contrived. Proverbs are a truly global phenomenon and, while their exact origins may not always be easy to pinpoint, by their very nature they transcend geographical, religious and cultural differences by focusing on broad topics such as family matters, friendship and affairs of the heart. Thus a proverb which has its roots in Asian culture may still convey a relevant wisdom for someone from a completely different corner of the world.

**B** Regardless of our nationality, most of us are similar in appearance or behaviour to one or both of our parents. Despite our protestations, my father and I are consistently told by those who know the family that the older I get, the more like him I become. 'What a load of rubbish!' say Dad and I in unison, with perfectly matched dismissive gestures and identical looks of scorn\*. As appears to be the case for me, the combined influences of our genes and our upbringing mean that often 'the apple doesn't fall far from the tree'. Here, the tree symbolises the parents and the fruit their offspring. Probably of Turkish origins, this

saying has its western equivalents in 'like father, like son' or 'like mother, like daughter'. Similarly, a child who resembles one or the other of his or her parents, or indeed exhibits similarities of character is often described as being 'a chip off the old block'. Though bitter personal experience may lead significant numbers of us to doubt the assertion, it is nevertheless widely believed that no bond is stronger than the one that exists between family members. In Africa, people say that 'a family tie\* is like a tree: it can bend but it cannot break'. Similarly, the proverb 'blood is thicker than water', which is thought to have originated in Germany, places family above all others, including close friends.

**C** 'To be without a friend is to be poor indeed' according to a Tanzanian proverb. Of course, nothing comes for free in this world, and that includes friendship. German wisdom advises us that 'friendship is a plant we must often water' or, in other words, effort is required to maintain relationships and avoid finding ourselves friendless. A popular way to achieve this is through the sharing of food: 'warm food, warm friendships' suggest the Czechs. In the same way, an Arabian proverb assures us that 'so long as the pot is boiling, friendship will stay warm'. Conveniently then, whereas some might say I was simply too lazy to hit the gym three times a week as promised every New Year's Day for the last five years, I blame my ever-expanding waistline on my friends and the 'sacrifices' required to keep our relationships suitably

warm. Maintaining friendships over the long term seems particularly important in Russia, where 'an old friend is much better than two new ones'. Perhaps this is because those who we have known for many years can usually be relied on to tell us the truth about ourselves, or as the Irish say, 'a friend's eye is a good mirror'. Should you need any further persuasion as to the importance of your mates, pals or buddies, then remember the Egyptian advice that 'friendship doubles joy and halves grief'.

**D** 'Love is blind', they say, which is of great comfort when you look like I do. The idea that love can 'blind' us to the negative in each other is recognised globally. In Germany, 'love sees roses without thorns\*' and for the Chinese 'even water is sweet'. Love-related proverbs also exist to remind us that we must accept our partners for what they are and try to love every aspect of them. In Africa, 'he who loves the vase loves also what is inside'. Often stereotyped as romantics, the French say that 'real love is when you don't have to tell each other' and to this, the famously gastronomic nation adds that 'the torch of love is lit in the kitchen'. Wise words indeed, though based on personal experience, I can't be sure whether they are talking about love between two people or the love of one man for the contents of his fridge. When it comes to neighbourly love, the Chinese remind us that there are limits: 'love your neighbour, but don't pull down the fence'. Finally, returning to the natural world, the people of Burundi warn those who feel loved by their canine\* companions that 'dogs don't love people, they love the place where they are fed'.

Although the human experience varies greatly according to our geographical and cultural origins, it seems proverbial wisdoms almost always ring true no matter where they originate.



## GLOSSARY

**scorn** (n) – the feeling that someone or something is stupid and does not deserve respect

**tie** (n) – a strong connection or relationship between people, groups or nations

**thorn** (n) – a sharp point that grows on the stem of a plant

**canine** (adj) – relating to dogs

## 1 Read the article quickly and match a title to each section.

- 1 Family Features ☐  
2 Best Mates ☐  
3 True Love ☐  
4 Worldly Wisdom ☐

## 2 Read the article again. For questions 1–10, choose from sections A–D. The sections may be chosen more than once.

- In which section of the article does the writer
- refer to certain proverbs as a justification for not achieving a personal goal? ☐
  - illustrate the truth of a proverb by citing a personal relationship? ☐
  - offer a scientific and a social explanation for a particular proverb? ☐
  - suggest a desirable quality in a platonic relationship? ☐
  - offer an explanation for pets' apparent devotion to their owners? ☐
  - explain the universal relevance of proverbs? ☐
  - suggest that food plays an important part in romantic attachment? ☐
  - comment on the importance of using proverbs in moderation? ☐
  - imply that he does not consider himself physically attractive? ☐
  - question the underlying assumption behind certain proverbs? ☐



## 3 Match the verbs in bold in the text to the definitions. Write the infinitive form without to.

- a formal verb meaning to show a particular quality, emotion or ability **exhibit**
- to locate or identify exactly ☐
  - to come from a certain place or begin in a particular situation ☐
  - to go beyond the usual limits of something ☐
  - to make something continue in the same way as previously ☐
  - to represent a quality, belief, feeling, etc. ☐
  - to look similar to something else ☐

## 4 Complete the sentences with the verbs from Exercise 3. Change the form if necessary.

The book, translated into over thirty languages, **transcends** cultural barriers to delight all kinds of readers.

- This GPS system is particularly accurate and can \_\_\_\_\_ the user's location to within a few metres.
- Victims of the illness usually \_\_\_\_\_ symptoms such as headaches, fever and insomnia.
- Inexperienced runners often find it difficult to \_\_\_\_\_ their initial pace for the whole race.
- The flower of this orchid closely \_\_\_\_\_ the insect that pollinates it.
- The soaring eagle on the country's new flag \_\_\_\_\_ the newfound freedom of its people.
- Svetlana's family \_\_\_\_\_ from Novosibirsk in Siberia, but she has never actually been there.

## WORD STORE 1E | Word pairs

## 5 Complete the sentences with the correct forms of the words in brackets followed by a noun. The first letters are given.

Advertising should not **condone** (condone) the **idea** that people are in some way inferior because they don't own the latest version of an expensive gadget.

- Unfortunately, according to those who knew Jobs, Fassbender gives a largely \_\_\_\_\_ (accuracy) **p**\_\_\_\_\_ of the Apple founder in this biopic.
- With its \_\_\_\_\_ (compel) **n**\_\_\_\_\_ and break-neck pace, it is impossible to put Jameson's new novel down.
- As a proud father, Kenneth \_\_\_\_\_ (song) his daughter's **p**\_\_\_\_\_ to anyone who will listen.
- Unlike the PM, we don't all come from a \_\_\_\_\_ (privilege) **b**\_\_\_\_\_ where wealth is taken for granted.
- \_\_\_\_\_ (spoil) **a**\_\_\_\_\_! If you haven't watched the season finale yet, don't read this.
- The documentary \_\_\_\_\_ (offering) an **i**\_\_\_\_\_ into the realities of family life in Spain.
- This book offers the reader neither a \_\_\_\_\_ (captivate) **s**\_\_\_\_\_, nor engaging characters.
- This comic novel imagines a \_\_\_\_\_ (poor)-**s**\_\_\_\_\_ royal family living in a caravan behind a supermarket.

## 6 Look at the vocabulary in lesson 1.2 in the Student's Book. Choose the correct prepositions to complete the sentences.

- Judges must examine every facet **in** / **with** / **of** the case before giving their verdict.
- In our case, the supposed strong bond **over** / **between** / **through** siblings simply wasn't there.
- Youngsters associated **with** / **on** / **in** gangs often drop out of school.
- Faced **to** / **with** / **by** the prospect of his parents separating, Scott decided to keep calm.
- Ross was envious **of** / **to** / **about** his parents' relationship with his sister. In their eyes, she could do no wrong.
- As your best friend I promise to stand **by** / **to** / **for** you through thick and thin.



1.3

GRAMMAR

Perfect and continuous aspect

SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

1 Complete the questions with the correct forms of the verbs from the box. The number of words you need to use in each question is given in brackets.

( domesticate   make   ~~own~~   replace   wake )

Have you ever owned a pet? (1)

1 Jill, if someone asked you what animal \_\_\_\_\_ a good pet, what would you say? (1)

2 My cat \_\_\_\_\_ forever \_\_\_\_\_ me up in the middle of the night for food. (2)

3 Did you know that as early as 3500 B.C. Egyptians \_\_\_\_\_ wild cats from Africa on a regular basis? (2)

4 \_\_\_\_\_ robot pets ever \_\_\_\_\_ real pets as man's best friends? (2)

2 ★ Choose the most suitable option to complete the sentences.

1 This summer the shelter on the outskirts of our town *will have taken care / will have been taking care* of injured animals for twenty-five years.

2 Since the release of the film *101 Dalmatians*, the number of people buying this breed of dog on impulse *has risen / has been rising* by almost 10 percent, according to the Animal Society's recent estimates.

3 Before retiring last month, Bertha revealed that she *had worked / had been working* with animals continuously for over fifty years and was now looking forward to spending more time with her own cat.

4 In June my little nephew, Freddie, *will have had / will have been having* his little green turtle for five years.

5 By 2015 the fad for exotic pets *had led / had been leading* to some tragic consequences.

3 ★ ★ Complete the dialogue with the correct forms of the verbs in brackets. Use no more than four words in each gap.

A: Ben, have you read (you/read) the story about those two missing dogs?

B: Not yet.

A: Well, they <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (be) missing for a week before a walker <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (find) them in the woods.

B: What <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (they/do) there?

A: Apparently, at some point one of them <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (get) trapped in a hole and the other one <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (stand) by its side since the unfortunate incident to keep it company and only <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (leave) it for a few minutes each day to go for help. In the meantime the owners <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (post) messages on Facebook like crazy. Finally, someone <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (spot) that dog and it <sup>9</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (lead) them to its trapped friend.

B: Wow, what a story! Listen, Andy, <sup>10</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (you/read) this magazine much longer?

A: I think I <sup>11</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (finish) by lunchtime. Why?

<sup>12</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (you/think) of reading the story yourself?

4 ★ ★ ★ Complete the text with the correct forms of the verbs from the box.

( accept   cause   ~~compete~~   get back  
live   make   not change   pick   reveal )

MY WORST FRIEND

For the past six months two hundred pets have been competing for the crown in the Naughtiest Pet Competition organised by Train Your Pet, a London-based company offering training courses for dogs.

The winner's owner, Sarah Cook, aged thirty, who is a sales assistant from Edinburgh, <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ at the prize-giving ceremony that up till that moment her beloved pet <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ hundreds of pounds worth of damage to her garden. 'When I <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ from work one day and first saw the mess Buddy <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_, I was in shock! I actually thought he had dug up all the plants in my herb garden, but it turned out it was only the rosemary and lavender. The remains were scattered everywhere and I <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ them up for two hours that afternoon.' Mrs Cook claims that the incident <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ her affection for her German Shepherd.

While she <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ the prize, a dog training voucher worth £800, Miss Cook said: 'Next month Buddy <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ with me for eight years and although he has cost me much more than expected, he is my closest friend and I couldn't imagine living without him.'

SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

5 Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first. Do not change the words in capitals. Use between four and six words in each gap.

How long ago did they buy her the guinea pig?

**BOUGHT**

How long is it since they bought her the guinea pig?

1 Harry and Will's great friendship ended after twenty-five years with a quarrel over copyright ownership. **HAD** Harry and Will \_\_\_\_\_ twenty-five years before they had a quarrel over copyright ownership.

2 My dog went missing in the middle of our daily walk in the forest. **WHILE** My dog went missing \_\_\_\_\_ our daily walk in the forest.

3 Megan's best friend got his pet snake in May. **SINCE** Megan's best friend \_\_\_\_\_ May.

4 Over the next month the charity near Londonderry will house about a hundred stray animals. **HOUSED** By the end of next month the \_\_\_\_\_ about a hundred stray animals.

5 The guide dog began helping Tim four years ago. **FOR** Next year the guide dog \_\_\_\_\_ five years.

6 After working with her for ten years, I was proud to be able to call Beth a loyal friend. **BEEN** We \_\_\_\_\_ ten years and I was proud to be able to call Beth a loyal friend.

/6



## 1.4

## USE OF ENGLISH

## Future in the past

## 1 Choose the correct answer A–C.

- My brother said he \_\_\_ to the party with his friends, but he came alone.  
A was going to come    B will be coming  
C was about to come
- Jeff promised he \_\_\_ us a postcard from Tenerife.  
A was sending    B is going to send  
C would send
- Nina \_\_\_ the wheel herself when she saw another car.  
A would change    B was going to change  
C was due to change

## 2 Complete the sentences with the words from the box. There are two extra words.

about due intended going  
planning point supposed verge

Jason was on the point of giving up when he found a solution to his problems.

- We've just found out by chance you're changing schools. When were you \_\_\_\_\_ on telling us this?
- What was I \_\_\_\_\_ to do? Everything was happening so quickly – I couldn't just stand there doing nothing so I called the police.
- At 9:45 the students were already standing in front of the school because the trip was \_\_\_\_\_ to start fifteen minutes later. And it did, at 10 sharp.
- The band's gig was on the \_\_\_\_\_ of being cancelled but, luckily, a big group of people showed up to watch.
- We got the text message about our flight just as we were sitting in the taxi and \_\_\_\_\_ to leave for the airport.

## REMEMBER THIS

- We use **was/were to + infinitive** or **was/were due to + infinitive** to talk about things destined to happen, e.g. *The new teacher **was (due) to start** work in May.*
- We use these structures with **perfect infinitive** to show that a planned event didn't happen, e.g. *The committee **was (due) to have announced** the results at 9 p.m. but the conference was delayed.*

## 3 Correct the mistakes.

Philip was planning ~~on~~ do his homework before watching a film on DVD. to

- We were getting anxious because it was time to leave and Tom hadn't arrived yet, but just as we were due to text him, we saw him crossing the street. \_\_\_\_\_
- One of the actors taking part in the performance had emailed them the day before to let them know that they were to have met him right after the show. \_\_\_\_\_
- Martha couldn't go to her friend's birthday party as she would go on holiday with her parents that day. \_\_\_\_\_
- Sunday was the ultimate deadline, so the principal knew that by the end of that week the registration process for the new courses would be finishing. \_\_\_\_\_

## 4 Complete the article with the phrases from the box. There are two extra phrases.

decided to invite    was calling    was due to happen  
was due to marry    was going to die  
was to have married    was on the verge of having  
~~was supposed to be~~    were planning on spending  
were to go    would be    wouldn't be taking  
would have stayed    would stay    would take

## WHO NEEDS A GROOM?

It was supposed to be the wedding of her dreams, but one week before it <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_, Jessica Hudson, a twenty seven year old banker from Nottingham, found out there <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ no ceremony. 'Last Friday my fiancé announced that he <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ everything off,' Ms Hudson told us. She <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ her college sweetheart in Nottingham cathedral yesterday. Afterwards the newlyweds <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ with their guests to the posh Four Seasons restaurant in the city centre. 'At first I believed I <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_,' said Ms Hudson. 'My mum thought I <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ a nervous breakdown, but then she had an idea,' Ms Hudson explains. 'Instead of cancelling the restaurant and catering, the Hudson family <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ the city's homeless and those in need to take part in the reception.' The would-be bride's mother Vera Hudson, aged fifty-five, told us: 'When I found out that the wedding <sup>9</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ place, I said I <sup>10</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ away something good from the whole experience.' On Monday she put up invitations on lamp-posts around the city centre and anxiously waited until Saturday. Although her heartbroken daughter decided she <sup>11</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ at home, Mrs Hudson watched as her new guests arrived. 'I was really touched to see complete strangers: single people, families, the elderly, all coming up to me, thanking me for the invitation,' she said. The newlyweds <sup>12</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ their honeymoon in Mexico. The trip is non-refundable so Mrs Hudson and her daughter chose to go on it together.

## SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

## 5 Complete the sentences with the words in brackets in the correct forms. Do not change the word order. Use between four and six words in each gap.

I thought you would be able to come to (would/able/come) our performance last Friday.

- You \_\_\_\_\_ (suppose/call/I) yesterday. Why didn't you?
- Last time we met, Kelly \_\_\_\_\_ (go/take/she) driving test. How did it go?
- My English teacher told me that I \_\_\_\_\_ (be/talk) the head of the school immediately about my inappropriate behaviour.
- The company rep couldn't talk much longer because \_\_\_\_\_ (he/be/leave) Paris on business in a matter of hours.
- Ted \_\_\_\_\_ (just/about/close) the window when he saw a man climbing over his neighbour's balcony.
- Kim \_\_\_\_\_ (on/verge/drop) out of school this time last month.





# LISTENING LANGUAGE PRACTICE

## Prepositions

- phrasal verbs with *look*
- collocations

### 1 Complete the extract from the recording with the missing prepositions.

Extract from Student's Book recording 1.8

**Jen:** Last week, I took part in an interesting experiment and thought that maybe you'd like to hear about it. I got involved <sup>1</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ one of my psychology lecturers. She explained that her team was looking <sup>2</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ the factors involved <sup>3</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ forming first impressions and was looking <sup>4</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ volunteers. Well, I was intrigued as that's the topic of my major assignment this semester. And I had some free time as I'd just finished an essay so I signed <sup>5</sup>\_\_\_\_\_. The experiment was simple. Basically we had to sit in front of a computer and watch a slideshow. The slides showed photos of people's faces accompanied <sup>6</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ information about the person, for example, that they'd been convicted <sup>7</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ a minor crime, or that they frequently did charity work. We had to study the photos for a couple of minutes and then try to recall them. I found this easy, as I'm good <sup>8</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ remembering faces. We were then told to come back three days later. I chatted <sup>9</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ the experiment <sup>10</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ a friend and we both wondered what the next step would be.

### 2 Complete the phrasal verbs with *look* with the missing letters. Use the definitions to help you.

..... **for** something – to try to find something

..... <sup>1</sup>\_\_**nt**\_\_ something – to examine the possibility of doing something

..... <sup>2</sup>\_\_**n** something – to watch something as a spectator

..... <sup>3</sup>**t**\_\_ somebody – to depend on someone for something

..... <sup>4</sup>\_\_**v**\_\_**r** something – to inspect something in order to check its quality

..... <sup>5</sup>**d**\_\_**wn** \_\_**n** somebody – to consider somebody/something inferior

..... <sup>6</sup>**b**\_\_**ck** \_\_**n** something – to think about something in one's past

..... <sup>7</sup>**thr**\_\_**gh** somebody – to ignore somebody by pretending not to see them

..... <sup>8</sup>**r**\_\_**nd** something – to visit a place or building as a tourist or guest

..... <sup>9</sup>\_\_**p** **fr**\_\_**m** something – to interrupt what you are doing to focus on something else

..... <sup>10</sup>\_\_**n** \_\_**n** somebody – to pay a short visit to somebody

LOOK

### 3 Choose the correct prepositions to complete the sentences.

- 1 James was so proud to score the winning goal with his family looking *on / over / round* that he ran round the whole pitch twice waving his arms in celebration.
- 2 If you need help with your dissertation, I wouldn't look *through / to / down on* Arthur. He's completely unreliable and his knowledge is sketchy at best.
- 3 I couldn't believe it when my own sister looked *into / through / to* me like I wasn't even there. I do hope she's not embarrassed by me.
- 4 Jules said he'd have a good look *from / into / over* my assignment before I hand it in.
- 5 Margaret's uncle Tim has offered to look *round / back on / into* her getting some experience at his accountancy firm next summer.
- 6 When I told my father I was thinking of leaving Poland to live in Spain for a year, he didn't even do so much as look *up from / down on / into* his newspaper.
- 7 Bella said they had some people looking *over / round / through* their house last week. She's worried that her parents are really going to sell up and move.
- 8 You really shouldn't look *back on / down on / on* your last relationship so much. It's self-defeating and it's definitely time you moved on.
- 9 Why don't we look in *at / on / to* Hannah on the way home? I hear she's not been feeling very well of late.
- 10 Just because Adam never went to university doesn't mean you should look down *at / by / on* him. He's actually one of the brightest people I know.

### WORD STORE 1F | Collocations

#### 4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in the box. There are two extra words.

break crime (x2) charitable move  
react splitting upstand

Did you know that having a criminal record can exclude you from getting certain jobs?

- 1 When I saw Patrick coming, I have to admit my gut \_\_\_\_\_ was to hide. Call me a coward – I don't care.
- 2 One minute my sister was standing next to me and a \_\_\_\_\_ second later she was gone.
- 3 Marianne said she's seriously thinking of doing some \_\_\_\_\_ work. Something involving mistreated animals by all accounts.
- 4 Jono swears he's the perfect \_\_\_\_\_ citizen. Can you believe he's never paid a single bill late?!
- 5 Even being convicted of a minor \_\_\_\_\_ can result in a permanent black mark next to your name.



1.6

SPEAKING

Speculating about appearance

1 Match phrases 1–7 to descriptions A–G.

- free and easy
- 1 aloof and distant
- 2 fun-loving and content
- 3 has got all the time in the world
- 4 introspective and thoughtful
- 5 pensive and melancholic
- 6 takes themselves too seriously
- 7 uptight and anxious

H

☐

☐

☐

☐

☐

☐

☐

- A The guy opposite me in the waiting room was biting his nails and tapping his foot and he kept on letting out these massive sighs. Guess he must've been waiting for some test results or something.
- B I can safely say I've never seen such a satisfied-looking dog. It adores tearing around the back garden fetching sticks and balls.
- C Carly has looked really down lately. Sort of slow and unhappy like she hasn't slept and is preoccupied with some problem or other.
- D The new girl doesn't say much, does she? I tried to get her chatting but she didn't seem interested.
- E Half an hour late and we're all sat on the coach waiting to leave, and the driver is still standing, drinking coffee and chatting to his mate as if there's no rush.
- F Since she did that 'modelling' for the local hairdresser, she thinks she's the next Cara Delevingne. It wasn't exactly the cover of *Vogue*, was it?
- G He was sat alone at a corner table. I don't know what he was thinking about but now and again he would raise his eyebrows and smile to himself.
- H He looks like he's escaped the corporate grind and left all his responsibilities far behind him.

2 Put the words in order to make phrases.

photo / saw / I / first / when / the When I first saw the photo, I thought she looked rather pensive.

- 1 about / way / there's / he's / something / the \_\_\_\_\_ smiling that makes him look a bit dodgy.
- 2 may / she / said / having / be / that \_\_\_\_\_ the kind of girl who always comes across as a bit melancholic.
- 3 be / can't / certain / I \_\_\_\_\_ but I think he's probably had plastic surgery.
- 4 to / as / looks / it / if / me \_\_\_\_\_ she hasn't got a care in the world.
- 5 just / than / more / it's / his \_\_\_\_\_ hair; his clothing also suggests he's a geeky type.
- 6 wrong / again / then / could / I / be \_\_\_\_\_ She doesn't look my type of person. \_\_\_\_\_ . We shouldn't judge too much by appearances.

3 Choose the correct words to complete the description.

OK, so my <sup>1</sup>initial / closer impression was that this is a man trying to comfort his friend because she's upset about something she's seen on social media, but now it looks to me <sup>2</sup>that / as if he might be her teacher or tutor and she's having trouble understanding a difficult problem. <sup>3</sup>Mind you / Again, I could be wrong. It's <sup>4</sup>hard / more to say why the student seems so frustrated, but <sup>5</sup>judging / guessing by her expression she's been trying to solve the problem for some time. <sup>6</sup>Feeling / Going purely on appearance, I'd say she's in her early twenties, so I suppose this has to do with a university class that's challenging for her. By the look of her, I'd say this is more <sup>7</sup>than / of just a trivial issue.



4 Complete the description of the photo below. The first letters are given.



Well, he looks like a <sup>1</sup>b\_\_\_\_\_ of a character, doesn't he? You know, the deep-thinking type who wants to be taken seriously. At first <sup>2</sup>g\_\_\_\_\_, he appears older than he actually is, I think – it probably has something to <sup>3</sup>d\_\_\_\_\_ with his beard and glasses. I'm <sup>4</sup>a\_\_\_\_\_ he's an artist or a musician because of his serious but 'cool' vibe. In fact, on closer <sup>5</sup>i\_\_\_\_\_, his unusual hat and large glasses make him seem like someone who likes to be noticed. I could be <sup>6</sup>w\_\_\_\_\_ about him, of course – it wouldn't be the first time – but my <sup>7</sup>g\_\_\_\_\_ feeling is that this guy would be interesting to spend time with. I'm only <sup>8</sup>g\_\_\_\_\_, but I think you could pick up a lot of new ideas by hanging out with him.



## WRITING

1.7

A formal email/letter

## 1 Complete the advice. The first and last letters are given.

When writing to organisations or people you don't know, it is common to use formal style. To achieve a higher level of formality in your writing, consistently use <sup>1</sup>full forms rather than contractions and opt for single verbs rather than <sup>2</sup>p... I verbs. In general, avoid <sup>3</sup>c... I phrases and where possible use formal quantifiers and <sup>4</sup>q... s. Do not use <sup>5</sup>s... n discourse markers such as *well* or *actually* but do aim to address the reader <sup>6</sup>i... y. Finally, always use <sup>7</sup>c... e sentences and never use question <sup>8</sup>t... s.

## 2 Match the examples to tips 1–8 in Exercise 1. Then rewrite them to make them more formal. Sometimes more than one answer is possible.

- We couldn't be more pleased that you've agreed to assist us. Tip ☐
- Event will start 9 a.m. and finish 4 p.m. Tip ☐
- We would be over the moon if you were able to join us for the day. Tip ☐
- Well anyway, we hope you will actually consider our request. Tip ☐
- We plan to go on holding these charity events as they bring in significant amounts of money. Tip ☐
- Would you be available to take part on the date specified? Tip ☐
- We understand you have been involved in such schemes in the past, haven't you? Tip ☐
- As the waterslide is kind of expensive to hire, we were hoping you could offer us a bit of a discount. Tip ☐



## 3 Read the task and underline the information mentioned in points 1–3.

The Minister for Education in your country is planning to visit a school in your region to see a successful European student exchange programme in action and to speak to the students involved. You have been asked to write to the minister and invite him/her to visit your school, where a successful exchange programme has been in operation for a number of years. There are students from several European countries attending English classes and studying other subjects in English at your school. You should explain:

- why the minister should choose to visit your school and its exchange programme in particular.
- how both visiting and local students benefit from the exchange programme at your school.
- what the school and its students would gain from the minister's visit.

- Who you should write to.
- The purpose of the letter.
- Three main points the letter should address.

## 4 Read the letter on page 13 and underline information relating to the three main points in the task in Exercise 3.

## 5 Complete the letter with the adjectives from the box.

current diverse entire grateful ideal  
substantial thrilled unique willing

## REMEMBER THIS

In formal writing, conditional sentences with the inverted pattern **should** (instead of *if*) + **subject + verb** are common. Include examples in your letters and emails to increase the level of formality.

(If you should be willing) → **Should you be willing to select our school, we would like to ...**

(If you should wish) → **Should you wish to contribute, please contact us ...**

## 6 Match the formal words and expressions in bold from the letter to the less formal items below.

- |    |   |                    |
|----|---|--------------------|
|    | signed up for                           | <u>enrolled in</u> |
| 1  | think about                             | _____              |
| 2  | choose                                  | _____              |
| 3  | to give a few examples                  | _____              |
| 4  | existed                                 | _____              |
| 5  | places                                  | _____              |
| 6  | because of                              | _____              |
| 7  | parts                                   | _____              |
| 8  | for everyone                            | _____              |
| 9  | so/therefore                            | _____              |
| 10 | plan                                    | _____              |
| 11 | show that we appreciate you being there | _____              |



Dear Minister,

My name is Tiago Cruz and I am a student from Portugal currently **enrolled in** the European exchange programme at King Bartholomew's Secondary School, in Newcastle. My classmates and I were **thrilled** to hear that you **intend** to visit our region and I am writing **on everyone's behalf** to explain why we feel our school would be the <sup>1</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ choice for your visit.

The exchange programme at King Bartholomew's is <sup>2</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ in the region **due to** the <sup>3</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ range of nationalities involved.

Over the ten years it has **been in existence**, students from such <sup>4</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ European **locations** as Slovenia, Latvia, Norway and Austria, **to name but a few**, have benefited from the opportunities presented by the programme. These opportunities include linguistic and social immersion, of course, but also regular events where exchange students present **aspects** of the culture of their countries to both local and visiting students. In this way, the <sup>5</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ school benefits from the programme.

Should you be <sup>6</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ to **select** our school, we would like to **honour your presence** on the day with a series of events including food-tasting, a concert and various sporting and cultural demonstrations organised and presented by our <sup>7</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ exchange students. We would also be extremely <sup>8</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ if you would **consider** giving us your thoughts on how we might recruit students from beyond Europe and **thus** work towards a truly international exchange in the future.

We look forward to your reply and hopefully to welcoming you at King Bartholomew's in the near future.

Yours faithfully,  
Tiago Cruz

## SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

## 7 Read the writing task. Then follow the instructions below.

A former student of your school has just won a gold medal while representing your country in the Olympic Games. Write a letter asking them to visit the school and give a talk to the students to inspire them to lead healthier lifestyles and become more involved in sport. You should:

- congratulate the sportsperson on their achievement and mention how proud the school is.
- explain how the students would benefit from a visit and a talk given by this sportsperson.
- outline how the visit would be organised and what efforts would be made to welcome the sportsperson.

Before you start, follow steps 1–3 below.

- Identify the key parts of the writing task to focus on what the letter needs to cover.
- Brainstorm ideas:
  - What are you going to include in the first paragraph?
  - Which ideas might you include in the main body?
  - How are you going to conclude the letter?
- Remember to use a formal style. Decide which words and phrases from this lesson and the lesson in the Student's Book could be useful for your letter.

## SHOW THAT YOU'VE CHECKED

Finished? Always check your writing (especially in the exam!) Can you tick ✓ everything on this list?

## In my formal letter/email:

- |   |                          |
|---|--------------------------|
| • I have used a formal salutation.  | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| • in the first paragraph, I have outlined my reasons for writing.                           | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| • in the main body of the letter/email, I have addressed the three main points in the task. | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| • I have achieved a formal style by:  | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| ➢ using full forms rather than contractions.  | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| ➢ choosing single verbs rather than phrasal verbs.  | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| ➢ avoiding colloquial expressions and incomplete sentence.                                  | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| ➢ avoiding question tags and spoken discourse markers.                                      | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| ➢ addressing the reader indirectly.   | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| ➢ using longer, more formal words and phrases.  | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| • I have used a wide range of adjectives to attract and hold the reader's attention.        | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| • I have used a formal sign-off.  | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| • I have checked my spelling.   | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| • I have checked my handwriting is neat enough for someone else to read.                    | <input type="checkbox"/> |



1.8 SELF-CHECK

VOCABULARY

1 Complete the text with the correct forms of the words in brackets.

Given that in childhood we spend a high proportion of our free time with our siblings, one would expect that children learn to be considerate (consider) towards each other and that shared memories provide the basis for a good relationship.

However, few people would admit to having always loved and backed their sibling <sup>1</sup> (condition). Children often accuse their parents of not being <sup>2</sup> (prejudice) as they are convinced their mother prefers their sister or brother to them. Many also spend their childhood <sup>3</sup> competing for <sup>4</sup> (approve) from one or other of their parents.

Nevertheless, no matter how <sup>5</sup> (respect) you may have been towards one another as children, siblings often get on better as they become older. You could be thankful one day to have someone who is always there during times of <sup>6</sup> (hard).

/5

2 Complete the sentences with appropriate words. The first and last letters are given.

Lisa is a prolific writer and she always comes up with such captivating narratives.

- 1 Roger's colleagues hate his f t manner! Recently he told somebody how stupid Tina was to have quit working for a big international corporation.
- 2 Henry VIII's i g stature must have terrified many of his subjects.
- 3 My younger brother, Alex, was left alone for a s t second but he still managed to break a vase.
- 4 My dad tends not to rely on his first impressions but his g t reaction to Jen's words was that she was a liar.
- 5 Mia's classmate is unbelievably o e – he never changes his mind.

/5

3 Match sentence beginnings 1–5 with their endings a–e.

After talking to somebody for only a few minutes, it's rather impossible to give an accurate

- |  |                          |
|--|--------------------------|
| 1 I was flabbergasted that Betty didn't bat                  | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 2 My grandma keeps singing                                   | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 3 Helen has often taken advantage of her privileged          | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 4 Lots of people have recently fled from the poverty-        | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 5 This company will never condone                            | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| a her neighbour's praises even though he's been mean to her. |                          |
| b stricken countryside and settled down in towns.            |                          |
| c using illegal computer programs.                           |                          |
| d an eyelid when I told her I was leaving the country.       |                          |
| e background as a manager.                                   |                          |
| f portrayal of a person's skills and abilities.              |                          |

/5

GRAMMAR

4 Complete the text with the correct forms of the verbs in brackets.

Living in the middle of nowhere and being an only child meant a fairly lonely life. That was why by the time I turned six, I had invented (invent) an imaginary friend, Gina. As my parents recall it, we <sup>1</sup> (constantly/argue), mainly about toys and games. But both Gina and I hated the mountains and once, on our way there, my parents heard me say to Gina: 'You see, nobody cares what we think, they <sup>2</sup> (pack) us in the car again to go hiking, but don't you worry, this time next month we <sup>3</sup> (hitchhike) to the seaside.' As I grew older, Gina became a distant memory.

However, my former classmate's own daughter, aged four, has such a friend too. She's not worried because she believes by the time Lizzy goes to school, the girl <sup>4</sup> (make) enough real friends to replace the imaginary one. She even sees it as a good thing, as now kids <sup>5</sup> (spend) more and more time staring at screens, and not developing their social skills.

/5

5 Complete the sentences with the words in brackets in the correct forms. Do not change the word order. Use between four and six words in each gap.

Dad, will you be using the car (you/use/car) later today?

- 1 The students had to wait for the guest speaker for over half an hour because he wasn't (not/tell) about the change in the timetable.
- 2 The roadworks here are usually not too chaotic, but this time was (they/cause/lot) traffic problems and people are late for work.
- 3 Because the kids rehearsed (rehearse/they/role) before the school play since morning, the room was still darkened when we came in.
- 4 Next week Tim and his builders will be redecorating (redecorate/we/house) for nearly eight months and it's still far from being ready.
- 5 I don't believe it! Are you saying that Joshua has been manipulating (manipulate/data) all this time?

/5

6 Complete the text with one word in each gap. The first letters are given.

My older sister Charlotte often repeated that after her university course, she would work in a large design and building company. We knew she was <sup>1</sup> going to do everything she could to make her dream come true.

Soon she found what she believed was her dream job. She was <sup>2</sup> determined to start in two weeks and just could not wait to be part of the team. To her great disappointment, it turned out that she landed herself a job in a rather unfriendly office where her colleagues were <sup>3</sup> suspicious to be concentrated on their projects only. Charlotte suffered terribly and was really on the <sup>4</sup> verge of quitting her career altogether when my dad suggested she should try working in a family-run company. He was right! When she reflects on it now, she often says that she was <sup>5</sup> able to give up doing what she always had dreamt of, but thankfully was pointed in the right direction.

/5

USE OF ENGLISH

7 Choose the correct answer A, B, C or D.

The value of friends

A recent newspaper report claims that something which many successful people have in common is their ability to associate people easily.

The explanation given is that if people <sup>1</sup> associate in others, they are more likely to get an <sup>2</sup> associate into human nature, which is an <sup>3</sup> associate of success in the workplace, whether one is managing staff or working in a team.

<sup>4</sup> associate these advantages, being popular is not without its dangers, apparently. If this report is to be believed, it is better to have fewer than ten <sup>5</sup> associate friends. More friends than this can drain you of energy if you have to listen to their problems and try to resolve them. Plus one or more of these friends will almost certainly <sup>6</sup> associate at some point and lose your trust.

Some people believe that, as texting and emailing replaces meeting face to face, it is becoming increasingly difficult to form a strong <sup>7</sup> associate with others. In the future it may become more of a rarity to enjoy an <sup>8</sup> associate friendship that would last for a lifetime.

- |                  |                  |
|------------------|------------------|
| A associate      | B coincide       |
| C befriend       | D redress        |
| 1 A confide      | B reveal         |
| C confess        | D depend         |
| 2 A appreciation | B awareness      |
| C insight        | D intuition      |
| 3 A side         | B angle          |
| C facet          | D point          |
| 4 A Instead of   | B Apart from     |
| C On account of  | D In spite of    |
| 5 A familiar     | B close          |
| C immediate      | D accessible     |
| 6 A let you down | B put you off    |
| C take you back  | D turn you round |
| 7 A relation     | B contact        |
| C commitment     | D bond           |
| 8 A upstanding   | B undying        |
| C impetuous      | D ambiguous      |

/8

8 Complete the text with one word in each gap.

An unusual pet

One day, after Jacques Damier had been volunteering in Namibia for around a month, he literally fell over a tiny lion cub on the verge of death. His split second decision to adopt the cub and nurse him back to health was something that <sup>1</sup> changed his life dramatically.

Three years on, Jacques still <sup>2</sup> assumes his parental responsibilities very seriously. He has invested a lot of time and energy <sup>3</sup> in the upbringing of his cub – regularly accompanying him on walks of nine hours or more through the parks. Sasha, <sup>4</sup> whom he named the cub, has now grown much bigger and heavier than his 'father,' which means that Jacques must now take care that their play-fighting doesn't get out of hand. <sup>5</sup> Without this risk, Jacques says that he has never felt scared.

However, Jacques is aware that by this time next year he will <sup>6</sup> have left Namibia and returned to his home in France. The task he faces now is to get Sasha used to living independently in the wild.

/6

9 Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first. Do not change the words in capitals. Use between three and six words in each gap.

The traffic was so heavy that we missed the beginning of the concert. **BY**

Due to heavy traffic, the concert had already begun/started by the time we got there.

- 1 My friend was just about to get on the train when I phoned her with the news. **POINT**  
My friend was just about to get on the train when I phoned her with the news.
- 2 Whenever I look at Tom, I have strong memories of my father. **REMINDS**  
Each time I look at Tom, he reminds me of my father.
- 3 My mother was determined not to let me go to the festival. **FOOT**  
My mother was determined not to let me go to the festival.
- 4 The student only started participating in lessons about three months ago. **PART**  
The student only started participating in lessons about three months ago.
- 5 I attempted to phone my aunt several times but nobody answered. **TOUCH**  
Despite several attempts to phone my aunt several times but nobody answered.
- 6 I will be supported by my friend when times get difficult. **STAND**  
My friend will be supported by my friend when times get difficult.

/6

Total /20

Total /30



# 2 Learning for life

## 2.1

### VOCABULARY

Studying and exams • synonyms  
• phrasal verbs • phrases to describe being relaxed/stressed

#### SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

1 Choose the correct forms to complete the headlines.

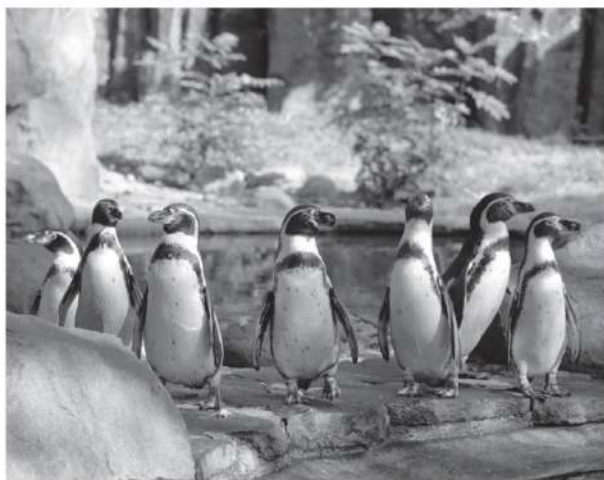
Report reveals widespread 'plagiarise' /  
plagiarism at prestigious university.

Celebrity <sup>2</sup>unrecognisable / recognises  
after plastic surgery nightmare.

Minister for Education claims he has no <sup>3</sup>memorable /  
memory of alleged incident at five-star hotel.

Education supplement: Top tips on  
effective <sup>4</sup>revision / revise.

Penguins <sup>5</sup>familiarise / familiar themselves  
with new enclosure at city zoo.



2 Complete the sentences with the correct forms of the words in brackets.

To say that all teenagers are awkward and moody is an unfair generalisation. (general)

- Jenny is so \_\_\_\_\_ (organise) she is unable to find her to-do list and can't even find a pen to write a new one.
- Jeremy found a website where he could order \_\_\_\_\_ (personal) trainers with his name on.
- I realise my fear of birds is completely \_\_\_\_\_ (rational) but I simply can't get over it.
- Emma, assuming you did your homework, could you \_\_\_\_\_ (summary) chapter two for the class, please?
- The brain's capacity to process \_\_\_\_\_ (vision) information is remarkable.

#### WORD STORE 2A | Synonyms – exaggerated language

3 Complete the dialogue with the words and phrases from the box. There is one extra item.

all the books under the sun flit frazzled  
hammer in looming manic minefield  
plastered regurgitate swimming in

K: You look tired, Maddie.

M: Well, Kit, you sure know how to make a girl feel good. But you're right. I'm so frazzled I can hardly keep my eyes open.

K: Well, yeah, you do look pretty awful. How come?

M: Awful? Er, well, life is just <sup>1</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ at the moment. I seem to <sup>2</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ between school, hockey team and babysitting and never actually have a spare moment.

K: You should slow down a bit.

M: Well, I'd love to.

K: Then again, with the exams <sup>3</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ next month I suppose that's going to be difficult. Soon you'll be <sup>4</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ textbooks and your bedroom walls will be <sup>5</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ with revision notes. And you're going to be in the school play, aren't you? That's a <sup>6</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ All those lines to learn and <sup>7</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ on the night – all that pressure to perform.

M: Well, thanks Kit. If you were trying to <sup>8</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ just how stressful my life is, then you've done a perfect job.

#### WORD STORE 2B | Phrasal verbs

4 Complete the sentences with the correct forms of the words from the box.

come face kick lead notch set top

Sorry I didn't call you. I forgot to top up my phone credit before I left home.

- Congratulations to last week's winning contestant who returns to today's show after \_\_\_\_\_ up an incredible score of 131 points.
- I know it hurts now, but soon the painkillers will \_\_\_\_\_ in and you'll feel much better.
- Experts hope that analysis of the flight recorder will reveal more about the events \_\_\_\_\_ up to the crash.
- When \_\_\_\_\_ with such a wide choice of handsets, it can be difficult to choose the best phone for your needs.
- This is a very rare school textbook from around 1830. How did you \_\_\_\_\_ by it?
- I need four volunteers to help \_\_\_\_\_ out the desks in the gym hall for tomorrow's exam.

#### WORD STORE 2C | EXTRA Phrasal verbs with up

5 Complete the television announcements. The first letters are given.



'For those who may have missed L is for Love then, for the next ninety minutes, there's a chance to catch up on all this week's heartbreaking episodes.'

'Watch top-class chefs <sup>1</sup>c\_\_\_\_\_ up new dishes on *Ultimate Chef Master Guru* after the break.'

'Next on *Home Plus*, is your ironing <sup>2</sup>p\_\_\_\_\_ up? Windows need cleaning? Bathroom's a mess? Fear not! The team from Get Scrubbing are here with golden tips to help you save time around the house'.

<sup>3</sup>B\_\_\_\_\_ up on your number skills now with our educational series *Making Maths Manageable*.'

'After tonight's compelling and heart-wrenching documentary, BBC1 will be <sup>4</sup>I\_\_\_\_\_ things up a bit with a new comedy from the team that brought you *It's a Guy Thing*.'

'If you haven't had chance to <sup>5</sup>r\_\_\_\_\_ up on the latest tech developments, then sit back and let the DBC bring you up to date in this week's *Tech-talk Magazine*.'

'Fans of quiz show *IQ* now have the chance to <sup>6</sup>I\_\_\_\_\_ up a double portion of facts and fun with our back to back Sunday special.'

'Which of our powerful female athletes will <sup>7</sup>s\_\_\_\_\_ up the strength to become this year's *Miss Mega-muscle*? Find out after the news headlines.'

#### WORD STORE 2D | Relaxed/stressed

6 Complete the diary entries. The number of letters in each missing word is in brackets.

12 June

Exam tomorrow ☹ Can't sleep. I'm a bundle (6) of nerves and I've got <sup>1</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (11) in my stomach. Trying to remember what I revised but my <sup>2</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (4) just keeps going blank. Feel completely <sup>3</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (3) of my depth. Why didn't I study more? I'll never get to sleep. My <sup>4</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (5) is pounding and I'm a <sup>5</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (7) wreck.

13 June

Feel like a <sup>6</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (6) has been lifted. Managed to <sup>7</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (3) a grip last night and finally get some sleep. Breakfast – Dad told me to keep things in <sup>8</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (11) and just do my best. Reminded me that I had sailed <sup>9</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (7) the mock exams. Got there, opened the paper, saw the essay questions and a <sup>10</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (4) came over me. Knew what to write – remembered everything. Just as Dad said – took it in my <sup>11</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (6). Such a relief ☺

/10



## 2.2

## READING

Bird Brains • phrases with prepositions • collocations

## —BIRD BRAINS—

In many cultures, crows have long been thought of in rather negative terms. These large black birds have been regarded as bad omens: dangerous and impure, bringers of bad luck or death. Even in the 21st century, for many the sight of their dark shapes and large, hammering beaks is as unwelcome as their ear-splitting cries, and few of us view them as more than unattractive pests\*.

1

One example of such adaptability has been observed among communities of crows living in the urban environment of a Japanese city. There, they have found a way of reaching food that is normally inaccessible. The birds wait patiently at traffic lights for the oncoming traffic to stop at the red light for pedestrians. Next, they hop in front of the waiting cars and place walnuts gathered from nearby trees on the surface of the road. Just before the lights turn green, they fly away and, when the traffic begins to move again, the cars roll over the hard-shelled nuts and crack them open. Finally, once pedestrians regain the right of way, the crows return and collect their delicious snacks.

2

In another revealing demonstration of avian\* intelligence, researchers found that rooks, members of the crow family, can use stones to raise the level of water in a container – just like the bird in the tale *The Crow and the Pitcher*. In the story, written thousands of years ago by the Ethiopian slave Aesop, a thirsty crow finds a pitcher, a deep jar for storing liquids, containing too little water for its beak to reach. The bird solves the problem by throwing pebbles, or small stones, into the pitcher one by one, until the water level rises high enough for it to drink.

3

To start with, the tasty treat was out of reach. Videos of the experiments show the birds examining the tube from different angles, appearing to think the problem through. Then the researchers provide a solution in the form of a handful of pebbles. The rooks can be seen picking up the stones and dropping them into the tube to raise the water level and bring the worm within reach. The birds appeared to estimate\* how many pebbles were needed from the start and, rather than try for the worm after each stone was dropped, they waited until the water level was high enough. They also selected larger stones over smaller ones, for greater effect.

4

Rooks and crows both belong to the corvid family. According to Mr Bird, 'corvids are exceptionally intelligent, and in many ways rival\* the great apes in their physical intelligence and ability to solve problems. This is remarkable considering their brain is so different to the great apes.'

5

'Wild tool use appears to be dependent on motivation,' said Mr Bird. 'Rooks do not use tools in the wild because they do not need to, not because they can't. They have access to other food that can be acquired without using tools.'

Corvids are by no means the only intelligent species of bird. Parrots too demonstrate amazing brain power. Known for their ability to 'talk', parrots were once thought only to mimic\* human words and phrases, but research on captive birds has shown that they are able to learn and use basic speech.



6

After tutoring, Alex, as he is known, has learned a vocabulary of over 100 words, which he appears to be able to use meaningfully. Even more impressively, Alex uses phrases such as 'no', 'come here' and 'I want X' in order to engage in what appears to be genuine communication.

The old saying 'bird brain', traditionally used to insult someone who does something stupid, would, it seems, perhaps be better used as a compliment for those who show intelligence.



1 Read the article without looking at the missing paragraphs. What is the main purpose of the text?

- 1 To highlight the intelligence of a particular species of bird. ☐
- 2 To compare avian intelligence to that of other species of animals. ☐
- 3 To report a new development in research into avian intelligence. ☐

2 Read the article again. Complete gaps 1–6 with paragraphs A–G. There is one extra paragraph.

- A A similar challenge faced the rooks studied by the appropriately named Cambridge University zoologist, Christopher Bird. In a series of tests, the four rooks named Cook, Fry, Connelly and Monroe were offered a worm floating on the surface of water in a vertical tube. ☐
- B Through the work of a professor at the University of Arizona, one such bird is now believed to have the intelligence and emotional make-up of a three- or four-year-old child. ☐
- C Crows have been engaged in this remarkable behaviour since the 1990s and have since been observed doing something very similar in California. There, it is thought to be an adaptation of a method used for opening clams. The crows were known to drop the tightly sealed shellfish from a height onto rocks on the seashore in order to crack them and get at the nutritious flesh hidden inside. ☐
- D Corvids can tell human beings apart by their voices and recognise people who have fed them. They are also alarmed by the sound of those they have never seen before. Most intriguingly, the scientists speculate that they may be clever enough to cooperate with other bird species. ☐
- E Research, however, suggests that the common view of the crow may be wrong. They might not be beautiful, but they are amongst the most intelligent creatures on the planet. For example, they have demonstrated a remarkable ability to change their behaviour according to their surroundings in order to make the most of opportunities presented. ☐
- F The only animal believed to have done a similar fluid-mechanics task is the orangutang, said Mr Bird, a PhD student. The orangutangs were reported to have brought a peanut within reach by spitting water into a tube. ☐
- G One member of this incredibly bright species, the Caledonian crow, is renowned for its ability to make twig and leaf tools in the wild and adapt them with great dexterity\* to extract grubs and caterpillars. However, such behaviour has never been seen in rooks living outside captivity\*. ☐

3 Complete the sentences with words from the text. Use the definitions in brackets to help you.

The town of Niagara is renowned **for** (famous for) its huge waterfalls.

- 1 Giraffes have long necks so they can \_\_\_\_\_ **at** (gain access to) leaves and fruit in the tallest trees.
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_ **the most of** (use something to the best advantage) your visit because you might never have the opportunity to come here again.
- 3 The book that Kristy needed was **out of** \_\_\_\_\_ (not near enough to be touched) on the top shelf, so she climbed on Daniel's shoulders.
- 4 One of the most important road signs to learn before you drive in a foreign country is the one that shows who has **the right of** \_\_\_\_\_ (the legal right to go before another car or pedestrian, e.g. at a junction).
- 5 The only way to **tell** the twins \_\_\_\_\_ (tell the difference between two similar things) is to hear them speak. Lewis has a slightly higher voice than Tyler.

## WORD STORE 2E | Collocations

4 Complete the sentences with the correct forms of the words from the box.

dismiss meet monotonous  
reserve stand think

I need to break the monotony of revision somehow, even if it's just a quick walk with the dog.

- 1 My parents \_\_\_\_\_ the idea of a gap year before university saying I should get my qualifications first.
- 2 I have \_\_\_\_\_ about doing the science project with Michael because, to be frank, he's lazy.
- 3 Please give your degree some serious \_\_\_\_\_ as choosing the wrong subject is the fastest route to failure.
- 4 I had to stay up all night to do it, but in the end I \_\_\_\_\_ the deadline for submission of my final assignment.
- 5 Katarina has always \_\_\_\_\_ out from the crowd with her unusual height and that frizzy hair.



## GLOSSARY

- pest** (n) – a small animal or insect that destroys crops or food supplies, or annoys other animals or humans in some way  
**avian** (adj) – relating to birds  
**estimate** (v) – to try to judge the value, size, cost, etc. of something without measuring it exactly  
**rival** (v) – to be as good or important as something else  
**mimic** (v) – to copy the behaviour, look or sound of something else  
**dexterity** (n) – skill and speed doing something with a part of your body; in humans, usually the hands  
**captivity** (n) – when an animal is kept in a cage or zoo rather than living in the wild



2.3

GRAMMAR

Speculating

SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

1 Decide what functions are expressed by the modal verbs in the sentences below.

We could learn together at the weekend.

☒ e

- 1 At that time the students of his class could get punished for whatever silly thing they did. ☐
- 2 Martin and his classmates have been notified that their A-level results may come any time. ☐
- 3 Sadly, my flatmates and I might not meet again. ☐
- 4 Back then Rachel could recite very long poems without referring to her poetry book even once. ☐
- 5 I know I must try harder if I want to get a good job. ☐
- 6 The lights in Maggie's room are still on. She must be revising for tomorrow's test. ☐

- a past possibility
- b past ability
- c obligation
- d speculation
- e future possibility

2 ★ Write sentences from the prompts.

probably / difficult / the / will / more / real / be / exam  
*The real exam will probably be more difficult.*

- 1 scored / harder / work / term / those / next / poorly / definitely / will / much / who
- 2 slackers / won't / there / the / be / probably
- 3 well / by / the / might / closed / supermarket / be / now

REMEMBER THIS

We can use **will** to express certainty or confidence about:

- the present: *Don't text her now – she'll be busy revising for tomorrow's test.*
- the past: *Don't text her now – she'll have gone to bed.*

3 ★★ Choose the option that explains each sentence.

- 1 Most students will have memorised the wordlist by now.  
A I'm sure most students have already memorised it.  
B It's possible most students have already memorised it.  
C Perhaps most students have already memorised it.
- 2 You could have told me you weren't taking the test.  
A Thank you for telling me you weren't taking it.  
B Why didn't you tell me you weren't taking it?  
C It was possible for you to tell me you weren't taking it.
- 3 Ben may have annoyed the boss by asking that question.  
A Perhaps Ben annoyed the boss by asking it.  
B I'm sure Ben annoyed the boss by asking it.  
C It's impossible Ben annoyed the boss by asking it.
- 4 We remember our Maths teacher could be sarcastic.  
A We remember he was always sarcastic.  
B We remember that he can be sarcastic at times.  
C We remember that he was sometimes sarcastic.

4 ★★★ Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets and *may, might, could or must*. Sometimes more than one answer is possible.

Ian: Rob, soon we'll have to decide which university we want to apply to. Does MOOCs ring a bell?

Rob: Yeah, I think I may have come (come) across an article on them some time ago. You <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (refer) to Massive Open Online Courses, right?

Ian: Exactly. So what do you think of them?

Rob: Well, the idea of studying for a degree at the most prestigious universities around the world without leaving your home <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (sound) exciting, but I look at university education as a social experience. Besides, there are many concepts which require real-time discussions with fellow students and tutors.

Ian: You <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (be) right, but full-time university fees are really high these days and you <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (admit) that the financial benefits of distance learning are quite appealing. Online courses aren't so expensive, many of them are in fact free, plus you <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (have) the opportunity to juggle studies with part-time work.

Rob: I can see you <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (give) this distance learning idea a lot of thought.

Ian: I'm just beginning, actually. I will definitely do some research before making my final decision.

SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

5 Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first. Do not change the words in capitals. Use between three and four words in each gap.

It's impossible the cleaner saw Matt yesterday. **CAN'T**  
The cleaner can't have seen Matt yesterday.

- 1 It's possible they had been copying answers from each other long before the examiner realised it. **MIGHT**  
They \_\_\_\_\_ answers from each other long before the examiner realised it.
- 2 I'm convinced that the students themselves removed some of the podcasts from the webpage. **MUST**  
Some of the podcasts \_\_\_\_\_ from the webpage by the students themselves.
- 3 His English stands no chance of improving because he doesn't do any homework. **DEFINITELY**  
His English \_\_\_\_\_ if he doesn't do any homework.
- 4 I'm sure you've realised by now that Monica is not very good with modern technology. **WILL**  
You \_\_\_\_\_ by now that Monica is not very good with modern technology.
- 5 Perhaps you don't know it, but Ned came top of the class in Geography last year. **MIGHT**  
You \_\_\_\_\_ it, but Ned came top of the class in Geography last year.
- 6 It's possible we're talking to the next Einstein. **COULD**  
We \_\_\_\_\_ to the next Einstein.

/6



2.4

USE OF ENGLISH

Accuracy with articles

1 Complete the pairs of sentences with a/an or Ø (no article).

- a If students want to have a good education, they need to be highly motivated.
- b In many countries Ø education is free only until the age of sixteen.
- 1 a Freedom of speech and Ø belief are fundamental human rights.
- b There is Ø strong belief that every child should have access to education.
- 2 a Marcia was widely considered as Ø outstanding beauty.
- b Do you know the saying that Ø beauty is in the eye of the beholder?
- 3 a We all have to suffer Ø pain at one time or another.
- b Stop being such Ø pain and start helping us instead!
- 4 a Last year I did a lot of voluntary work for Ø charity called Sightsavers.
- b Most people think it's a good idea to give money to Ø charity.



REMEMBER THIS

- Some nouns are not preceded by a/an, however, putting an adjective in front of them requires using a/an: have **breakfast** but have **a big breakfast**
- Putting an adjective in front of a number also requires using a/an: **2 percent** but **a mere 2 percent**
- Most uncountable nouns can never be preceded by a/an even if you put an adjective in front of them: *All our students have **easy access** to the Internet.*

2 Complete the sentences with a/an or Ø.

My parents are sending me to England because they want me to speak Ø excellent English.

- 1 In some countries Ø shocking 60 percent of people are illiterate.
- 2 We're having such Ø beautiful weather right now that it's hard to believe it's autumn.
- 3 Every student will get Ø packed lunch before the trip.
- 4 Gina's grandparents enjoy Ø very good health.
- 5 Most of my classmates do Ø voluntary work.
- 6 If you sign up for our course now, you'll save Ø amazing 30 percent off the regular price.

3 Find six more mistakes in the text, two in each paragraph, by adding or crossing out a/an.

Most English schools introduced <sup>a</sup>ban on mobile phones during classes a long time ago and now they have conclusive proof that they were right. According to the latest study, not giving students an access to their phones translates into extra week's education in a school year. Researchers also observed that test results in such schools went up by over 6 percent.

The research was conducted at several British schools before and after bans were introduced. 'While it's true that a modern technology used in the classroom engages students and improves a performance, there are also potential obstacles, as it could lead to distractions,' the researchers say.

The findings will definitely provide powerful arguments in the ongoing debate about pupils' access to mobile phones. In the UK, staggering 90 percent of teenagers own smartphone; in the US, almost 75 percent.

4 Read some comments on the article in Exercise 3 and choose the best option.

Why ban phones? Teachers should teach our children phone etiquette instead. They should be taught from <sup>1</sup>Ø / a / an early age about responsible use.

My phone means everything to me. It's <sup>2</sup>Ø / a / an tremendous help and I wouldn't want to part with it.

Yeah, it helps you play games or check your Facebook account. Thanks for <sup>3</sup>Ø / a / an great laugh!

What I meant was <sup>4</sup>Ø / a / an mobile technology offers useful educational apps that students can use during classes, like graphic display calculators.

Using mobile apps for checking everything is <sup>5</sup>Ø / a / an example of overdependence on technology.

Phones are <sup>6</sup>Ø / a / an terrible distraction. I wish my school would ban them.

SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

5 Complete the gaps with one word wherever necessary.

None of us seemed to be in a hurry to see the exam results. We were walking there rather hesitatingly.

- 1 It was Ø great sacrifice for Ruby to give up her place on the football team.
- 2 They say that money is not the key to Ø happiness.
- 3 Jon will need to do a lot of preparation before the presentation because he hasn't done anything like it in a Ø.
- 4 It was Ø real pleasure to train your puppy to fetch a ball, he's really intelligent.
- 5 Chris was on his way to the airport when all of a Ø he received an urgent call to go back to work.
- 6 Having Ø good laugh with friends always cheers me up and makes me feel great.

/6



1 Complete the conversation between the man and woman and with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

Extract from Student's Book recording 1.20

W: Have you ever consulted (ever/consult) an online video for help with <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (fix) something? You know, one of these 'how-to' videos? I'm a bit wary of <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ them – I'm not sure I trust the advice fully.

M: Yeah, I <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (use) them. When I <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (have) issues with ☐ software, anything like that, I go on these specialist sites or forums. They've got detailed advice and videos there. Like the other day I had a problem <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (install) an update for my computer and I went online immediately, and this guy sorted out the whole problem for me in no time ☐.

W: So it's professionals sponsored by tech companies? Otherwise, it seems odd.

M: Not always. It's often ordinary people who <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (have) similar problems ... or people who are technical geniuses and want to share their expertise. First you type in your problem, and then loads of videos pop up with people who are a lot more technical than you ☐ or me. What they say is really easy <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (follow) because they're like tutorials that show you how to fix problems step by step ☐. You <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (think) that the videos posted by experts might be too complicated or too difficult for the average person to follow, but they're not.

W: Right. And I guess it doesn't really matter if the videos are a bit amateurish – I mean they're free – and you can always re-watch them if you <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (not/get) it the first time ☐. When real experts choose <sup>9</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (share) their knowledge with everyone for free, it's really helpful.

M: Absolutely – it's good <sup>10</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (know) help is just a few clicks away ☐.

2 Match definitions 1–6 to the underlined phrases in the text.

- 1 to do something very quickly
- 2 to encounter problems with somebody/something
- 3 to do something methodically by going from one stage to the next
- 4 to be quickly accessible via a computer program
- 5 to have greater knowledge regarding technology than somebody else
- 6 to understand something without needing for it to be repeated
- 7 to worry about something because it might cause a problem

3 Complete the sentences using the correct form of the underlined phrases from Exercise 1.

James, can you help Dan install this new application? You know that you are a lot more technical than he is and his whining is driving me up the wall.

- 1 This homework is doing my head in. I've never been good at Maths, but I'm \_\_\_\_\_ this Algebra problem like you wouldn't believe.
- 2 Wow! You finished that assignment \_\_\_\_\_. Nobody else has even started it yet and you've already handed it in!
- 3 Don't you just love the Internet? Everything you ever need to know is only \_\_\_\_\_. Take Wikipedia®, for example. An absolute fount of knowledge.
- 4 Tomas admits to not being very good at DIY but when he takes it slowly and does things \_\_\_\_\_, he can do a decent enough job.
- 5 Tamara tends to be \_\_\_\_\_ doing or saying something wrong when she meets new people. First impressions are really important to her.
- 6 Alright, alright! You don't have to keep going on about it – I \_\_\_\_\_.

WORD STORE 2F | Phrases

4 Complete the sentences with suitable words to make phrases. The first letters are given.

It looks like Marty and Jake will both have to re-sit the test. You could say they're in the same boat now – however unenviable that might be.

- 1 Ah. There's nothing like a breath of fresh air to help clear your h \_\_\_\_\_. I reckon I'll be ready to start work again soon.
- 2 If only you'd told me that you were worried about the school gala. I had no idea that we shared the same c \_\_\_\_\_ and that we could have supported each other.
- 3 Why doesn't Tom use his i \_\_\_\_\_ for a change and do something without asking first? He might find it very liberating and he'll probably get more recognition for his work.
- 4 A lot of blogs are all about people wanting to share their e \_\_\_\_\_ in a particular field. There's a great one about 1960's underground rock! It's really informative.
- 5 Wayne finds it hard to keep his c \_\_\_\_\_ when Barbara talks to him. Everything goes out of his head and he ends up blathering like an idiot. It's quite funny really.
- 6 You know what? I feel a real a \_\_\_\_\_ with the new History teacher. He seems really cool and it turns out he's a big fan of The Flaming Lips like I am.
- 7 If you'd only use your c \_\_\_\_\_ sense you'd be able to work it out in no time. It's really not that complicated you know.



2.6

SPEAKING

Giving supporting examples

1 Put the words in order to make phrases used for giving supporting examples.

- my / case / in *In my case*
- 1 obvious / is / an / example \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 is / notable / most / of / the / one / examples \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 of / example / a / it's / prime \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 a / illustration / is / useful \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 mind / the / example / comes / is / graphic / the / that / most / to \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 classic / is / a / case \_\_\_\_\_

2 Complete the sentences with appropriate prepositions or Ø if no preposition is necessary. Sometimes more than one answer is possible.

- A case *in* point is the intriguing story *of* Laika, one *of* the first animals ever *to* orbit *Ø* the Earth.
- 1 Consider \_\_\_\_\_ how many towels are washed unnecessarily each day by the world's hotels and the perceived importance \_\_\_\_\_ comfort and luxury over environmental responsibility becomes clear.
- 2 Think \_\_\_\_\_ last year's Tweed Run cycle event, \_\_\_\_\_ which around 1,000 people took part, including many cyclists \_\_\_\_\_ abroad.
- 3 Take \_\_\_\_\_ the success of reality shows such \_\_\_\_\_ *The Great British Bake Off*. It is tempting to conclude that the average TV viewer is not seeking \_\_\_\_\_ intellectual stimulation \_\_\_\_\_ part of their primetime entertainment.
- 4 Look \_\_\_\_\_ how many people are involved \_\_\_\_\_ the Park Run movement around the world. Clearly, the popularity of running as a method of keeping fit is \_\_\_\_\_ the rise.

3 Match arguments 1–5 with supporting examples A–E. Then complete the supporting examples with the words from the box.

case   consider   **extreme**   illustration  
instance   look

- Parents around the world are trying to ensure their children's future success by signing them up for so many extra activities and classes that they no longer have time to be kids! F
- 1 According to various accounts, the boy became so exhausted mentally and physically that he eventually had to be hospitalised. ☐
- 2 In fact, psychologists say that boredom is a key part of growing up. ☐
- 3 Children who are kept constantly occupied may never discover their true talents. ☐
- 4 Of course it is also true that exposing kids to a variety of activities allows them to discover their real interests. ☐
- 5 As with most things in life, finding the right balance is key. ☐

- A For \_\_\_\_\_, when children are left with nothing specific to do, they often find or invent an activity to alleviate the boredom, and this helps them to understand their own natural interests.
- B \_\_\_\_\_ at the many cases of childhood over-occupation around you, and then find ways to allow more freedom, and even a bit of boredom, into your own child's life.
- C A \_\_\_\_\_ in point is a friend's child, who was kept constantly busy until the family went on an off-the-grid holiday, when the boy picked up a pencil and paper and revealed an amazing talent for drawing.
- D Whether or not this case is factual, it certainly serves as a striking \_\_\_\_\_ of a real problem, which is that many children are not being allowed to experience the pleasure of inventing their own activities and playing on their own.
- E \_\_\_\_\_ that a child who is never given a music lesson or a dance class may never know they have a real talent, but exposing them to too many activities can lead to confusion and frustration.
- F One of the most *extreme* examples of this is the son of an ambitious family who ended up suffering from severe exhaustion as a result of being occupied fourteen hours per day.

4 Correct the mistakes.

- Typical example of such misunderstandings occurred during a teacher-student meeting held last week.
- A typical example*
- 1 The most striking example comes to mind is that of Lance Armstrong, who finally admitted using performance enhancing drugs during all seven of his Tour de France victories. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 A useful illustrator is given as part of the discussion on p. 17. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 A case on point is the huge investment that has gone into the city's new concert hall. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 For instant, a UK report from 2012 found that only 27.2 percent of the population aged from sixteen to seventy-four had a degree or equivalent, or higher. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 Consider about how many times people share articles on social media sites without actually having read more than the headline. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 Look to the wonderful work done by specialist animal welfare groups such as the Albino Squirrel Preservation Society. \_\_\_\_\_





## WRITING

2.7

An article

## 1 Read the article and choose the most suitable title.

- 1 Use it or lose it: how to educate a gifted child. ☐
- 2 Teaching everyone: how to divide attention in the classroom. ☐
- 3 Special needs: why gifted pupils need attention too. ☐



Schools and colleges around the world quite rightly devote a great deal of time and effort to helping children and young adults who are deemed to have special educational needs. Nine times out of ten, this effort is focused on those who are struggling to reach a minimum standard and therefore falling behind with their education. However, is it not the case that if you are gifted, you also have distinct educational requirements and just as much right to individual attention in the classroom? Let's consider both sides of the debate.

'The cream always rises to the top', they say, and so it is often assumed that bright children will **excel** at whatever they take on. Don't consistently good grades at school amount to proof of the satisfactory academic progress of those who achieve them? If so, then surely teachers are justified in their decision to concentrate on those who are **lagging** behind. Add to this the claim that labelling certain children as 'gifted' sends an unproductive message to those who don't **measure** up, and there is really nothing left to debate, is there?

Not so fast. Gifted children need attention too! Exceptional pupils should face rigorous challenges at school if they are to remain engaged and realise their full **potential**. Without such challenges to rise to, these pupils soon become bored and then distracted. It is a tall order for them to **thrive** if they are constantly asked to twiddle their thumbs while their peers catch up. According to US researchers, by not stretching the brightest of their students 'teachers could be **squandering** the talent of the most creative minds of a generation'.

Clearly, there is a case for attending more closely to the needs of top pupils, as well as helping those who are struggling to make the **grade**. There will always be competition for teachers' attention and schools' resources and, in my opinion, every child is entitled to their fair share during the time they spend at school or college.

## 2 Read the article again and underline examples of the following items:

- Three direct questions
- A direct address to the reader
- A quotation
- An exclamation

## 3 Put the words in order to make phrases for addressing the reader directly in an introduction.

details / the / at / look

Let's look at the details.

- 1 arguments / examine / the  
Let's \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 debate / sides / the / both / of / consider  
Let's \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 the / points / against / clarify / for / and / main  
Let's \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 the / issue / angles / from / explore / opposing  
Let's \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 main / view / of / the / elaborate / on / points  
Let's \_\_\_\_\_

## 4 Complete the first part of each quotation with the words from the box. Then match the sentence halves.

according observed pointed  
quote said words

It was Benjamin Franklin who said 'an investment in knowledge

- 1 In the \_\_\_\_\_ of Oscar Wilde, 'education is an admirable thing, but it is well to remember from time to time
- 2 'It is ordinary people who have to be educated'. \_\_\_\_\_ out Jean-Jacques Rousseau, 'and their education alone can serve
- 3 As Arthur Schopenhauer famously \_\_\_\_\_ 'truth acquired by thinking of our own
- 4 To \_\_\_\_\_ Alexander Pope, 'men must be taught as if you taught them not
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_ to Anatole France, 'the whole art of teaching is

- A only the art of awakening the natural curiosity of young minds'.
- B is like a natural limb, it alone really belongs to us'.
- C that nothing that is worth knowing can be taught'.
- D and things unknown proposed as things forgot'.
- E as a pattern for the education of their fellows'.
- F always pays the best interest'.

## REMEMBER THIS

Avoid overusing exclamations as this can make your writing seem trivial or immature. Also, if you use too many, they will lose their significance. Consider including a maximum of two in your piece of writing.

## 5 Complete the adverts with the words in bold from the article.

Do you **excel** at video games?  
Ever thought about becoming a professional gamer?  
Call us to find out more.

Private science tuition.  
Helping secondary students  
to make the <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_  
since 1998.

Are you  
<sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ behind in English?  
Study privately with a qualified  
native speaker.  
Call 77 804 904.

Realise your  
full <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ with  
our world-renowned  
life-coaching  
programme.

Could you pass your  
child's final exams?

Find out how you  
<sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ up against  
the country's brightest  
secondary students.

Gifted  
footballer?

Avoid <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ your  
talent. Contact Ellis  
and Marks football  
agents to find out  
how we can help  
you reach your goal.

Ensure your cacti  
<sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_  
with our specially  
formulated food mix.

## 6 Complete the definitions. Use the article to help you if necessary.



If someone **twiddles** their thumbs, they do nothing while they wait for something to happen.

- 1 If something happens or is true **nine times out of ten**, it is almost always the case.
- 2 If someone is **s** \_\_\_\_\_ to do something, they are finding it very difficult.
- 3 If someone **e** \_\_\_\_\_ at something, they are extremely good at it.
- 4 **Not so f** \_\_\_\_\_ is an informal way of saying 'wait or think before you do or believe something'.
- 5 If something is a **t** \_\_\_\_\_ order, it is an unreasonable or difficult demand.
- 6 If you **devote supreme e** \_\_\_\_\_ to something, you try your very hardest at it.

## 7 Complete the sentences with the correct forms of the phrases in bold from Exercise 6.

Nine times out of ten everything is fine, but just occasionally something unexpected happens.

- 1 The lifeguards are \_\_\_\_\_ to reach the stranded couple because the waters are so rough.
- 2 Collins, last year's world snooker champion, really does \_\_\_\_\_ at these long corner pocket shots.
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_, buddy! Remember who is in charge here. I'll tell you when we are ready.
- 4 To win, Simons needs to cover the last ten kilometres in less than thirty minutes. A \_\_\_\_\_ by anyone's standards.
- 5 Gordon is late and Sarah has been sitting \_\_\_\_\_ for nearly an hour.
- 6 These climbers \_\_\_\_\_ to their preparations as they know how many lives Everest has claimed in the past.

## SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

## 8 Read the writing task. Then follow the instructions below.

Should physically disabled students be encouraged to study alongside able-bodied students rather than in schools that are specially adapted to their needs?

Write an article for a student website giving arguments for and against and stating your view.

- 1 Brainstorm arguments for and against.
- 2 Select the best ideas and make a plan for your article.
- 3 Add an interesting title.
- 4 Write your article and remember to use a fairly informal style.

## SHOW THAT YOU'VE CHECKED

Finished? Always check your writing (especially in the exam!) Can you tick ✓ everything on this list?

In my article:

- I have begun with an eye-catching title. ☐
- I have addressed the reader directly. ☐
- I have asked direct questions. ☐
- I have included at least one quotation. ☐
- I have included an exclamation. ☐
- I have used a fairly informal style. ☐
- I have explored both sides of the issue. ☐
- I have given my own opinion. ☐
- I have checked my spelling. ☐
- I have checked my handwriting is neat enough for someone else to read. ☐



2.8 SELF-CHECK

VOCABULARY

1 Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.

Having begun university studies at sixteen, Agnes definitely gets / stands / walks out from the crowd.

- The aftermath of the principal's decision to expel the troublesome students turned out to be quite a/an minefield / composure / expertise.
- The news about bankruptcy came as a blow so Fiona needed time to clear her thoughts / brain / h d.
- Dan's determination to revise Maths shows he's worried about his rambling / summoning / looming exams.
- With so few pupils the village school was venturing / teetering / mustering on the edge of closure.
- Matthew and Libby are going bungee jumping next weekend provided neither gets cold feet / hands / legs.

/5

2 Match the words from the two boxes to make expressions. Then complete the sentences with the expressions.

A bundle of common in the same leap into meet under

B boat nerves sense the deadline the sun the unknown

Don't you find Zoe tiring? She seems to have an opinion on every subject under the sun.

- For Harry, going to do voluntary work in Africa was a \_\_\_\_\_, as he'd never done it, or even been to Africa.
- When the parents finally found their daughter, she was a \_\_\_\_\_, trembling and crying over her lost dog.
- Oh, come on. Use some \_\_\_\_\_ when connecting the printer to the computer. It's not rocket science.
- There's no point in working until late tonight. You're not going to \_\_\_\_\_ anyway.
- Sorry Jen, I can't lend you any money. We're \_\_\_\_\_ now because I've also lost my job.

/5

3 Complete the sentences with the appropriate verbs in the correct form. The first letters are given.

I need to top up my phone before I can call you again.

- Thanks to Roy's outstanding performance we've n\_\_\_\_\_ up another victory!
- You'd better b\_\_\_\_\_ up on your Italian before you go to Sicily, as few people speak very fluent English there.
- It's unbelievably difficult to listen to Luke giving a talk because he just f\_\_\_\_\_ between subjects and rarely sticks to the point.
- Although the new vinyl shop has an impressive collection of LPs, anything by my favourite composer is hard to c\_\_\_\_\_ by.
- Can you s\_\_\_\_\_ out the aim of the questionnaire more clearly so that everybody understands why it's necessary to conduct it?

/5

GRAMMAR

4 Choose the correct options. Sometimes two answers are possible.

- You must / will / can be feeling tired after such a long day in the lab. Sit down and I'll make you a cup of tea.
- Are Tom and Jim sure they've got the right address of the boarding house? They couldn't / mustn't / can't have written it correctly. We're too far from the school.
- The supervisor definitely can't / may not / won't tolerate any smartphones during the exam.
- Mr Jenking is often working in the garden now. I guess he might / could / can have lost his job in the bank.
- A: Why isn't Sue here yet? B: I don't know, but her train will / may / must be running late today.

/5

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets. Do not change the word order. Use between three and four words in each gap.

The owner of the mansion may be staying (may/stay) there now so we can only look around the gardens.

- Don't worry. I'm sure Sandra \_\_\_\_\_ (must/borrow) your laptop. She needed one this morning.
- If you ask me, making Jeff rewrite his assignment definitely \_\_\_\_\_ (not/help/improve) his handwriting. It's pointless.
- Since James is so poor at playing the piano, he \_\_\_\_\_ (can/be/learn) it for very long.
- Earlier this morning we \_\_\_\_\_ (might/come) across some snakes in the grass but they were unlikely to be poisonous.
- It's most probable that class 3B is in the gym. But they \_\_\_\_\_ (could/prepare) for the final exams in the library right now.

/5

6 Read the following text and correct five more mistakes with the use of articles. The numbers in brackets indicate the number of mistakes in each paragraph.

What education is needed nowadays?

It is said that schools should provide students with excellent education to help them in their career and life choices. But is that really the case?

School leavers emphasise how few subjects offer a practical experience and not just theory. They also feel that their timetables are filled with incredible number of uninspiring subjects rarely allowing them to have good night's sleep. It is obvious that students need a help, but does being given a lot of homework work? (4)

Both educationalists and students claim that there should be less focus on tests and more attention paid to a progress that students make in the course of education. (1)

/5

Total /30

USE OF ENGLISH

7 Choose the correct answer A, B, C or D.



Why I prefer teaching myself

Although I'm only sixteen, I'm perfectly capable of B my own decisions. I also love doing things on my own and rarely get 1 by difficulties come across. I can be a case in 2 for all of those who would prefer to go for home schooling rather than formal education.

Everyone has their preferred learning style and I learn more efficiently when I choose what I do rather than when I'm faced 3 tasks imposed on me. I go at my own speed, taking everything in my 4. I don't feel isolated, because the goals I set with the help of others are chosen with my ultimate ambitions in mind – like what qualifications I might need for the career I want. Another important point is revision and preparation for exams. I avoid just 5 for exams. The key point is having a good understanding of the subject. If I don't understand something, I look it up – there's no shortage of options around.

I often do more than strictly necessary because I'm self-motivated, and I rarely get frazzled because I can 6 things in perspective. I'm deeply convinced that thinking for myself is worth my 7 because I tend to sail through exams thanks to it and my increased knowledge. Obviously, some might think it's easier to stay in their comfort 8 and be spoon-fed, but the extra effort involved in self-teaching has given me a will to succeed.

- |               |                 |
|---------------|-----------------|
| A doing       | B making        |
| C getting     | D finding       |
| 1 A put off   | B let down      |
| C cooked up   | D written off   |
| 2 A idea      | B mind          |
| C point       | D example       |
| 3 A to        | B with          |
| C at          | D through       |
| 4 A stride    | B way           |
| C footstep    | D pace          |
| 5 A hammering | B regurgitating |
| C breezing    | D venturing     |
| 6 A maintain  | B hold          |
| C carry       | D keep          |
| 7 A period    | B time          |
| C while       | D moment        |
| 8 A area      | B section       |
| C place       | D zone          |

/8

8 Complete the text with the correct forms of the words in brackets.

Preparing for college

You're all set to make your first application (apply) for college – how should you go about it? Unsurprisingly, there are several 1 (administration) hurdles to get over.

Firstly, producing an impressive CV – there should be no irrelevant 2 (ramble)! Simply construct a clear summary of your qualifications so far, and remember to 3 (rational) your reasons for wanting to do the course. Check if the university website provides any useful 4 (guide) on how to do this.

Use your 5 (initiate) – try contacting students already at the college to find out what the course is like. You might get some valuable tips from people who've been through the experience.

Finally, present yourself as a 6 (depend) and serious person – colleges take students who will maximise their time, and if you're confident, you'll go far.

/6

9 Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first. Do not change the words in capitals. Use between three and six words in each gap.

It's possible the teacher has already left to prepare the speech. **MAY**

The teacher may have already left to prepare the speech.

- Knowing good Spanish can be useful when travelling around Mexico. **HAVING**  
When travelling around Mexico \_\_\_\_\_ Spanish can be useful.

- I'm sure he didn't rush doing it and that's why the presentation was so brilliant. **HURRY**  
He can't \_\_\_\_\_ and that's why the presentation was so brilliant.

- The number of our students rose sharply thanks to some new departments having been opened. **ROOF**  
Thanks to some new departments having been opened, the number of our students \_\_\_\_\_.

- Sarah isn't here yet. Maybe the train is running slightly late. **MIGHT**  
The train \_\_\_\_\_ bit late and that's why Sarah isn't here yet.

- I would have been able to help you there and then if you had asked me to explain the matter. **COULD**  
It's a pity you didn't ask me to explain the matter as \_\_\_\_\_ there and then.

- I'm sure you have never felt as tired in your life as after such a long and exhausting exam. **FEELING**  
You must \_\_\_\_\_ after such a long and exhausting exam than ever before.

/6

Total /20



# 3 Let's eat

## 3.1

### VOCABULARY

Cooking and eating • food  
• kitchen/dining sounds  
• collocations

#### SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

##### 1 Complete the definitions. The first letters are given.

- An oily fish flavoured with smoke. **s** smoked **m** mackerel
- A popular type of shellfish of which there are many varieties. **c** \_\_\_\_\_
  - A commonly eaten fish with white flesh (when cooked). **c** \_\_\_\_\_
  - A large bird, often white, and capable of swimming, flying and walking on land. **g** \_\_\_\_\_
  - The meat of a young cow, in contrast to beef from older cows. **v** \_\_\_\_\_
  - The meat of a game animal, usually referring to deer. **v** \_\_\_\_\_
  - Originally from Asia, long, thin strips of dough boiled and often eaten with soup. **n** \_\_\_\_\_
  - A spice made from dried, powdered chilli. **p** \_\_\_\_\_
  - A spice derived from the central part of the crocus flower, known for its expense and its ability to colour food a rich golden yellow. **s** \_\_\_\_\_
  - A bright green herb with pointed leaves, common in Europe and often chopped and sprinkled over finished dishes. **p** \_\_\_\_\_
  - A green herb with rounded leaves and a perfumed taste, common in Asian cuisine. **c** \_\_\_\_\_
  - The organ (a pair) responsible for removing waste products from the body. **k** \_\_\_\_\_
  - The organ (single) that regulates the composition of the blood. **l** \_\_\_\_\_
  - A collective term for seafood items that have a shell. **s** \_\_\_\_\_

#### WORD STORE 3A | Food

##### 2 Label the pictures. The first letters are given.

- |                          |                  |                  |
|--------------------------|------------------|------------------|
| <b>b</b> <u>beetroot</u> | 3 <b>a</b> _____ | 6 <b>o</b> _____ |
| 1 <b>l</b> _____         | 4 <b>n</b> _____ | 7 <b>o</b> _____ |
| 2 <b>l</b> _____         | 5 <b>b</b> _____ | 8 <b>c</b> _____ |



##### 3 Put the words in the correct groups. Use a dictionary if necessary.

acidic bland chewy flaky glutinous  
honeyed pasty perfumed pungent slimy

**Smells/flavours:** **acidic** e.g. vinegar, <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ e.g. boiled rice, <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ e.g. **aklava**, <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ e.g. coriander, <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ e.g. mustard

**Textures:** <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ e.g. toffee, <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ e.g. fresh croissants, <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ e.g. uncooked dough, <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ e.g. overripe bananas, <sup>9</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ e.g. oysters

#### WORD STORE 3B | Kitchen/dining sounds

##### 4 Complete the extract from a memoir with the sound words from the box. There is one extra word.

buzzy chink clink crunch  
hum pop sizzle

#### Chapter 1 – The Early Years

My love of food and ultimately my career as a restaurateur has its roots in my childhood. My parents ran a small but successful Italian eatery named 'Capaldi's' in the East Village district of Manhattan, New York. We lived in a minuscule apartment perched over the business and our single shared bedroom nestled directly above the bustling dining room. Oddly, it is the myriad sounds rather than the smells which remain with me most vividly some fifty years later. I recall lying alone in bed listening to the **buzzy** conversations of the evening's gathered diners. This comforting constant was punctuated by the rhythmic <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ of cutlery as the customers made their way through the many courses placed before them by Miguel, our long-serving Mexican waiter, and the clear <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ of glass on glass, when the water jugs were being filled, then swiftly distributed, table by table. The sudden <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ of steaks hitting the grill in the kitchen would rouse me when I had almost drifted away and then, during the summer months, the <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ of the ancient air-conditioning system would draw me irresistibly back into the arms of Morpheus. Winters were marked by the <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ of the customers' footsteps on the icy pavement outside as they arrived red-cheeked and empty-bellied, or left rounded and glowing with well-fed satisfaction.



#### WORD STORE 3C | Collocation

##### 5 Complete the extracts from restaurant reviews. The first letters are given.

'The coffee was served dangerously hot, my **pet** hate. Taste ruined, tongue burnt.'

'An overly formal dining room leaves customers sitting stiffly, obliged to talk in **h** \_\_\_\_\_ tones.'

'The flexible kitchen staff seem happy to cater for all manner of **d** \_\_\_\_\_ requirements.'

'Fine **d** \_\_\_\_\_ does not get any finer than at this world-class establishment.'

'As I enter, a hungry-looking woman seated at a foodless table in the far corner is having a **f** \_\_\_\_\_ in front of a spotty and sorrowful looking young waiter. Not a good start.'

'No **s** \_\_\_\_\_ tablecloths or silver cutlery here. Instead, a no-nonsense dining room knocking out delicious staples at a reasonable price.'



#### WORD STORE 3D | EXTRA Collocations

##### 6 Complete the recipe with the correct forms of the words from the box.

clove drop knob lump pinch  
sip spoonful sprig stick

#### simplestudentrecipes.com

##### Spicy Veggie Spaghetti (for two)

Add a **pinch** of salt to boiling water and submerge around 100g of pasta. Chop one or two <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ of garlic, a large red chilli and a <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ of celery and fry gently for two minutes with a <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ of butter. Chop and add a <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ of parsley, a small <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ of honey, and a <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ of lemon or lime juice and stir continuously over a low heat. Add a can of chopped tomatoes and continue stirring. Remove the pasta from the boiling water after seven minutes and mix with the sauce. Grate a <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ of Parmesan (or similar) cheese and sprinkle over the pasta and sauce to serve.

#### SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

##### 7 Complete each pair of sentences with the same answer A–C.

- Most of the patients in this particular ward are here because they have \_\_\_\_\_ all their lives.
  - I like fish, but not really strong types such as \_\_\_\_\_ sardines.

A smoked B worried C burned
- Our most popular genre of downloads is definitely \_\_\_\_\_.
  - The balloon went \_\_\_\_\_ and frightened the little dog half to death.

A bang B rock C pop
- It is my firm belief that an exotic animal such as a pangolin should never be kept as a \_\_\_\_\_.
  - One of my \_\_\_\_\_ hates is watching myself in videos.

A child B pet C toy
- I'm naturally suspicious of people who'd rather chew on a \_\_\_\_\_ of celery than enjoy an ice cream.
  - The undercover police officer chose simple black clothes in order not to \_\_\_\_\_ out.

A stand B bit C stick
- Many students who \_\_\_\_\_ out of university tend to end up in menial jobs.
  - A \_\_\_\_\_ or two of lemon juice will stop the chopped apple from going brown.

A drop B squeeze C lump

##### 8 Choose the correct answer A–C.

- I'm really not a fan of the \_\_\_\_\_ taste of things like Turkish delight or marzipan.  
A perfumed B glutinous C hushed
- If raw meat smells bad and has a \_\_\_\_\_ surface, then it should be disposed of immediately.  
A fine B slimy C buzzy
- Soggy granola is just no good. It should have a satisfying \_\_\_\_\_ to it.  
A clink B crunch C sizzle
- Those with special dietary \_\_\_\_\_ beware. This is not a country that caters well for fussy eaters.  
A requirements B tones C fits
- Avoid draining the whole bottle in one go. Instead \_\_\_\_\_ the water slowly over a couple of minutes.  
A sip B drop C spoon

/10





## READING

3.2

Bitter sweet facts • phrases  
• collocations

## Sweet, sweet sugar: the bitter truth



Initiated by an American doctor named Robert Lustig, there have recently been calls in the US for laws to restrict sugar as if it were an addictive substance. The more sceptical among us might question whether this isn't just another case of food-related scaremongering\*. Obviously, there are products on the market that are toxic, costly for everyone, extremely addictive and that have been proven to cause an array\* of diseases. But sugar? OK, we know it rots your teeth if you don't clean them after eating it. Sure, if you eat too much sugar, you put on weight. Admittedly, it can alter your metabolism, so when you eat sugar, you crave\* more. And, well, yes there is the 'sugar-high' that anyone who has spent time around 'kids on cola' will certainly acknowledge. But, honestly, sugar is harmless enough, isn't it? Or perhaps it's more accurate to say that most of us are happier not to acknowledge the bitter truth about our apparently sweet friend.

Dr. Lustig is a professor of clinical paediatrics at the University of California, San Francisco, and a respected expert on childhood obesity. His area of expertise is human metabolism – how our bodies break down food and turn it into energy. Some of his lectures are on YouTube and several of them have gone viral. This middle-aged, grey-haired, slightly stocky\* doctor, who wears a suit and tie and talks about the metabolism of fructose, has, in fact, had more than two million hits.

According to Lustig, there are now 30 percent more obese people in the world than undernourished people. It is tempting to think that this obesity epidemic and its associated metabolic problems are the result of people eating too much fat, but this, Lustig argues, is not the case. In the seventies, he explains, the medical establishment believed it had discovered a link between dietary fat and heart attacks, and in response, the entire western world went low-fat. The problem, Lustig tells us, is that 'when you take the fat out, it tastes like cardboard'. The food industry had to do something. What did they do? They added high-fructose corn syrup and sucrose, or in other words sugar. So about thirty-five years ago, the developed world turned its diet upside-down. We stripped away fat, and added sugar; 'invisible' sugar sneaked into everything from steak pie to smoked salmon.

What happens in your liver when you eat too much of this

'invisible' sugar? Well, there's a complicated chain of events, but the upshot\* is something called 'leptin resistance'. Leptin is a hormone produced to tell us when we're full. When we eat too much fructose, leptin is sometimes switched off and we lose the ability to tell when we've consumed as much as we need. Interestingly, Lustig offers a hypothesis as to why this happens. He says it might be because there was a time of year, harvest time, when ancestral humans had an abundance\* of fruit, followed by a time of year, winter, when they had almost nothing. In crude terms, we evolved to stuff our faces at harvest time. Fructose makes us want to eat more; it tells us not to be satisfied. That was good, then, when food was scarce\*, but it's a disaster now, when it's everywhere. Lustig believes this is why so many people are 'off-the-scale' fat these days.

So should sugar consumption be regulated by law? For a substance to be controlled, it must have four characteristics. It must have the potential to be abused, it must be toxic, it must be widespread and it must cause problems for people other than those who abuse it. Sugar, it seems, ticks all these boxes and that's why Lustig thinks it should be ranked alongside alcohol and tobacco. Sugar is everywhere. It's addictive, it's toxic, and, in the end, we all have to pay for it, if not with our health, then at least in our taxes.

There is, of course, a big barrier to any effort to regulate sugar consumption, namely the food industry. 'The food industry,' Lustig believes, 'has no impetus\* to change. They're making money hand over fist.' Some industries still have collective influence that somehow allows them to continue selling products that have been proven to kill both users and non-users. Well, it seems there's something even bigger to worry about: 'Big Sugar'. The obesity expert Philip James puts it this way: 'The sugar industry has learnt the tricks of the tobacco industry. Confuse the public. Produce experts who disagree. Try to dilute the message.' Lustig has been accused of irresponsible fear mongering.

What if Lustig is right? What if sugar is the culprit\*? What can we do? We can start the long, laborious\* process of coming out of denial. We're doing it with other commonly-known addictive substances, and it's working. We made them expensive, harder to buy, and harder to advertise. We kept them away from children. We made them taboo. Can we do this with sugar? Well, perhaps, but sugar is a tougher opponent than other substances. They are only found in a few products, whereas sugar is everywhere. It's in the sausages, it's in the beans and it's in the toast. To radically cut our intake would be to radically shake up the economy.

1 Look quickly through the article. Does the author:

- 1 criticise the opinions expressed by Dr Robert Lustig? ☐
- 2 remain neutral? ☐
- 3 agree with Dr Lustig's points of view? ☐

2 Read the article again. For questions 1–6, choose the best answer A–D.

- 1 In paragraph 1, what does the writer suggest about the issue of sugar consumption?
  - A Consumption of sugar is more harmful than consumption of other addictive substances.
  - B Many people are in denial about the negative effects of sugar consumption.
  - C Its harmful effects have been exaggerated by the media.
  - D The benefits of consuming sugar outweigh the drawbacks.
- 2 The writer describes Lustig's appearance to emphasise
  - A his belief that Lustig is an ordinary person.
  - B his claim that Lustig's YouTube lectures are dull.
  - C his admiration for Lustig's success.
  - D his surprise at Lustig's popularity on YouTube.
- 3 According to Lustig, extra sugar is added to low-fat foods to
  - A increase calories.
  - B reduce heart attack risk.
  - C improve flavour.
  - D tackle diabetes.
- 4 In paragraph 4 Lustig says he believes a common cause of obesity these days is
  - A the insufficient amount of fruit in the modern diet.
  - B the overproduction of a certain hormone in the liver.
  - C the easy availability of food in modern society.
  - D the overconsumption of certain foods at specific times of the year.
- 5 Phillip James suggests that the sugar industry
  - A has copied the tactics of the tobacco industry.
  - B is less of a problem than the tobacco industry.
  - C has lied about the harmful nature of its products.
  - D acknowledges some of Lustig's claims.
- 6 What is the writer's opinion on the chances of a reduction in sugar consumption in the future?
  - A The only challenge lies in changing consumer behaviour.
  - B If the consumption of other addictive substances can be reduced, then so can sugar consumption.
  - C It would be economically impossible to reduce it enough to be effective.
  - D Even acknowledgement of its harmful effects may not lead to a reduction in consumption.

3 Complete the sentences with the words from the box. Use the information in brackets and use the text to help you if necessary.

acknowledge boxes denial  
face fist upside

Eventually, Pamela had to acknowledge the bitter truth (admit that something unpleasant is true) and admitted she was never going to make it as an actress.

- 1 A few individuals are **making money hand over** \_\_\_\_\_ (earning large amounts of money) while the rest of the population live in poverty.
- 2 It's time Shelly **came out of** \_\_\_\_\_ (stopped lying to herself) and admitted she was partially responsible for the end of the relationship with her fiancé.
- 3 A new head teacher was appointed and within two months she had **turned the school** \_\_\_\_\_ **down** (radically changed everything).
- 4 The trouble with 'all-you-can-eat' places is that I always end up **stuffing my** \_\_\_\_\_ (overeating) and then regretting it.
- 5 Being cheap, economical and easy to drive, Ron's new car **ticked all the** \_\_\_\_\_ (met all the desired criteria).

## WORD STORE 3E | Collocations

4 Match the words from boxes A and B to make collocations. Then complete the sentences with the collocations.

A keen learning processed sensitive  
simple special uncontrollable (x2)

B binges cravings difficulties sense  
food pleasures questions treat

I used to have a keen sense of smell, but after years of smoking it's useless now.

- 1 Increasing evidence suggests too much \_\_\_\_\_ in your diet is detrimental to your long-term health.
- 2 My sister has \_\_\_\_\_ associated with autism and attends a special school equipped to help her.
- 3 Occasionally I get these \_\_\_\_\_ for chocolate and I have to rush out and buy some.
- 4 People should indulge in \_\_\_\_\_ such as a walk or a chat with friends, which cost nothing but mean a lot.
- 5 He was totally creepy and kept asking me all these \_\_\_\_\_ about my weight or my family.
- 6 Every so often I have some \_\_\_\_\_ when I eat everything sweet in the house and then feel guilty.
- 7 As a \_\_\_\_\_ to celebrate finishing their exams, Mick is taking his best friends to a posh restaurant.

## GLOSSARY

**scaremongering/fear mongering** (n) = the practice of deliberately making people worried or nervous, especially in order to get an advantage

**array** (n) = a large or impressive group of people or things

**crave** (v) = if you crave something (e.g. fame, a cigarette, attention), you desire it strongly

**stocky** (adj) = short and muscular

**the upshot (of sth)** (n) = the final result of a situation

**abundance** (n) = a large quantity of something

**scarce** (adj) = not widely available; hard to find

**impetus** (n) = an influence that makes something happen

**culprit** (n) = the thing or person to blame

**laborious** (adj) = requiring a lot of time and effort



3.3

GRAMMAR

Transitive and intransitive phrasal verbs

SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

1 Match beginnings 1–3 with endings a–c.

- Tina is one of those people who constantly cook

1 In some restaurants, when a waiter sees that your water glass is almost empty, he will top

2 If you consume more calories than you need, usually they soon pile

3 Since embarking on a new diet plan two weeks ago, my friend has notched

a it up without even asking you.

b up her first significant win: a loss of one kilo.

c up and so-called *love handles* appear around your waist.

d up perfect excuses for not going to the gym.
- ☒

☐

☐

☐

2 Put the words in brackets in the correct places in the sentences.

- My nephew, Tommy, loves sugar. He can't do without. <sup>it</sup>(it)

1 Pete's friends like low-carb snacks so he always makes a point of stocking up on before every party. (them)

2 After dining at that seaside restaurant the other day, my friend and I went off completely. (fish)

3 The police officers let off with just a warning and said she'd be in trouble if she went near the town hall with a similar banner again. (her)

3 Complete the descriptions with the phrasal verbs from the box.

- call for   cheer up   ~~catch up with~~

go down   pays off   plan ahead

MUST-HAVE FOOD APPS

As more and more people are using smartphones as their cooking resource of choice, we're here to help you catch up with some of the best apps.

**MyFitnessPal for iOS and Android, free**

With this calorie-counting app your weight will definitely <sup>1</sup>\_\_\_\_\_. It stores over twelve million foods in its database. The recipe counter makes it really easy to track the nutrition in homemade meals and helps you <sup>2</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ for things you should avoid. The exercise tracker lets users see the amount of calories they've burnt.

**Jamie's Recipes for iOS, free**

If food preparation makes you frustrated, you will <sup>3</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ when using this Jamie Oliver app – it doesn't <sup>4</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ a master chef. It will inspire you through fifteen recipes and how-to videos every week. Subscribers can download seasonal collections and money-saving meals. Getting this app really <sup>5</sup>\_\_\_\_\_.

4 Correct the mistakes in word order. There is one correct sentence.

When you have to meet a deadline, do you often snack fast food on to keep you going? snack on fast food

- 1 The takeaway restaurant in the high street was closed by the town authorities down. \_\_\_\_\_

2 Do you frequently wolf down whatever you find, without thinking about what you're eating? \_\_\_\_\_

3 Do you always plan to eat just what's on your plate or do you often end having seconds up? \_\_\_\_\_

4 Do you really think that any self-proclaimed nutritionist knows how to sort efficiently out our problems? \_\_\_\_\_

5 Replace the words in bold with phrasal verbs. Use the correct forms of the verbs from the box and add suitable prepositions.

- drop   look   ~~put~~   sink   stand

Susan just keeps **postponing** going to the gym.

putting off

- 1 The authorities are **investigating** the benefits of withdrawing fizzy drinks from school canteens. \_\_\_\_\_

2 We **visited** our grandparents on our way home. \_\_\_\_\_

3 The doctor stopped for a moment to let his words **be fully understood**. \_\_\_\_\_

4 You know perfectly well that these animals aren't capable of **defending** themselves. \_\_\_\_\_

SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

6 Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first. Do not change the words in capitals. Use between two and five words in each gap.

That factory has just dismissed half of its workforce. **OFF**  
That factory has just laid off half of its workforce.

- 1 The local restaurant was only punished with a fine for not complying with strict hygiene standards. **OFF**  
The local restaurant was \_\_\_\_\_ for not complying with strict hygiene standards.

2 Nobody has fully realised the implications of the new diet yet. **SUNK**  
The implications of the new diet \_\_\_\_\_ yet.

3 Sticking to physical exercise and consuming a variety of nutrients have finally produced results. **PAID**  
Sticking to physical exercise and consuming a variety of nutrients \_\_\_\_\_.

4 Maintaining weight requires healthy eating habits. **FOR**  
Maintaining weight \_\_\_\_\_ habits.

5 Whenever I go to a party, I never worry about overindulging in food and gobble up whatever passes my way. **DOWN**  
Whenever I go to a party, I never worry about overindulging in food and \_\_\_\_\_ my way.

6 Sophie stopped liking diet drinks when she found out they contain sweeteners. **OFF**  
Sophie \_\_\_\_\_ drinks when she found out they contain sweeteners.



## 3.4

## USE OF ENGLISH

## Particles in phrasal verbs

## 1 Replace the wrongly used prepositions. There is one correct sentence.

What did you say? Could you speak ~~out~~? up

- The lesson dragged up for another half an hour and nobody seemed to be paying attention. \_\_\_\_
- He poured me out a generous cup of coffee. \_\_\_\_
- I reminded Emily time and time again, but she refused to pay off. \_\_\_\_
- Before you cook a beetroot, chop down its leaves. \_\_\_\_
- Could you start handing off the cutlery, please? \_\_\_\_
- At the end of the meal, Sebastian broke up a piece of bread and used it to clean the plate. \_\_\_\_

## 2 Replace the words in bold with the phrasal verbs from the box in the correct form.

bring up   carry out   come across  
cut down   give away   go up  
let down   put away   put forward

A: Derrick, the other day I **found by chance** / came across a TV programme called *Watch What Happens Live*. Do you know it?

D: Sure, they invite celebrities and ask them to **complete** / \_\_\_\_\_ odd tasks. What did they come up with this time?

A: The host **suggested** / \_\_\_\_\_ the idea that his guest, Salma Hayek, that Hollywood actress, should eat deep-fried frogs' legs, stir-fried silkworms and a jalapeño. And she did! Yuck!

D: Well, Alice, what did you expect? TV stations will do anything to make their ratings **increase** / \_\_\_\_\_ and not to **disappoint** / \_\_\_\_\_ their audience.

A: But she swallowed worms! It was amazing how many of them she managed to **eat** / \_\_\_\_\_. And then the host **introduced** / \_\_\_\_\_ the topic of diets. She **revealed** / \_\_\_\_\_ her big secret to coming back to her pre-baby size: you must **reduce** / \_\_\_\_\_ the food you eat and exercise a lot. And drink lots of juice.

D: Wow! That's a shocker!

## 3 Complete the text with the missing prepositions.

## RISKY FISH ROULETTE

Five men from Osaka, Japan, got together at a restaurant last Friday to celebrate their promotion at work. Unfortunately, their celebration was brought to an abrupt end when they got poisoned after dining on a very expensive delicacy: toxic fish called *fugu* (puffer fish in English). Although the chef allegedly asked them to think their decision <sup>1</sup>\_\_\_\_, the men insisted on being served banned parts of *fugu*. 'The customer is always right,' as the saying goes, so the waiter meekly handed <sup>2</sup>\_\_\_\_ plates with *puffer fish* liver. When the gourmets started

vomiting and having breathing difficulties, the restaurant staff called an ambulance.

Apart from being very expensive (the sales of *fugu* dishes bring <sup>3</sup>\_\_\_\_ \$200 a piece), it is also one of the world's deadliest fish.

The Japanese government has wanted to cut <sup>4</sup>\_\_\_\_ *puffer fish* completely from menus for years, but so far without success. The authorities struggle <sup>5</sup>\_\_\_\_, but fortunately have managed to put



<sup>6</sup>\_\_\_\_ a bill that heavily regulates the delicacy, i.e. chefs who want to serve it are required to train for two years before taking a very demanding test. According to a city health official, the restaurant in question took on a chef with a *fugu*-preparing licence earlier this month and he knew he was supposed to take <sup>7</sup>\_\_\_\_ the banned parts before serving the dish. It is unclear, why he agreed to serve the customers regardless. The restaurant owner claims it will carry <sup>8</sup>\_\_\_\_ serving *fugu*, but the police have closed down the place for investigation.

## SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

## 4 Complete each set of sentences with the same word.

- Before the party the girls had to drag the big table from the terrace into the kitchen.
  - We're sorry to drag you into this unnecessarily.
  - The afternoon lecture seemed to drag on forever and everybody lost interest in the topic.
- Health experts say that \_\_\_\_\_ down on salt lowers the risk of heart disease and stroke.
    - We are against \_\_\_\_\_ back investments in education.
    - Start by \_\_\_\_\_ the tops off the carrots from that box.
  - Visiting that café \_\_\_\_\_ back many happy memories.
    - When Tim \_\_\_\_\_ up the issue of eating meat, his wife looked at him angrily.
    - The committee \_\_\_\_\_ their plans forward by two weeks.
  - Did you really think \_\_\_\_\_ your decision to leave Madrid for good?
    - As soon as these changes are put \_\_\_\_\_, we will start looking for new staff.
    - Candidates for this post had to go \_\_\_\_\_ a very challenging process of selection.
  - The whole family left the country two days before the war \_\_\_\_\_ out.
    - Somebody \_\_\_\_\_ in when they were away on holiday.
    - In the past, many visitors to the Acropolis \_\_\_\_\_ off pieces of ancient buildings and took them home.
  - All the proposals the tutor \_\_\_\_\_ forward were rejected by the students.
    - I'd love to stay longer and chat, but I don't want to \_\_\_\_\_ you out.
    - No snacks before dinner, so \_\_\_\_\_ the cookies away.
  - Andy struggled \_\_\_\_\_ despite the twisted ankle.
    - Even though the man has spent two weeks in hospital, he keeps \_\_\_\_\_ eating junk food.
    - When the settlers got lost in the desert, they had no choice but to carry \_\_\_\_\_ walking.

/6





# LISTENING LANGUAGE PRACTICE

Expressions • phrases • idioms with food • adjectives

1 Read the extracts. Put the missing article *the* in gaps a–l if necessary.

Extract from Student's Book recording 1.30

- S1: I'd never tried oysters before but I <sup>a</sup> was on vacation on the East Coast of <sup>b</sup> \_\_\_ US and they're everywhere. You can even pick them up at <sup>c</sup> \_\_\_ street stalls. Anyway, I plucked up the <sup>1</sup> courage / confidence and took my first taste and actually I quite liked it [...].
- S2: But <sup>e</sup> \_\_\_ other day a friend recommended this take-away place. I had a feeling ahead of <sup>2</sup> time / game that it wouldn't be any good, but they still managed to disappoint! <sup>d</sup> \_\_\_ tacos were <sup>3</sup> downcast / downright unpleasant – <sup>e</sup> \_\_\_ corn tortillas weren't fresh, and <sup>f</sup> \_\_\_ salsa was all sweet and sticky like <sup>g</sup> \_\_\_ tomato ketchup and worst of all it wasn't spicy at all.
- S4: The other day, I went to my local chippy to get a takeaway and I found that <sup>h</sup> \_\_\_ place had changed <sup>4</sup> hands / ways. [...] It's disappointing when you're imagining one taste and you get another one, which is nowhere near as nice, but I guess even <sup>i</sup> \_\_\_ best places end up going <sup>5</sup> downhill / downward sometimes.
- S5: There's this really nice stall where we go to get <sup>j</sup> \_\_\_ crepes but it's so popular you usually have to line up right round the <sup>6</sup> edge / corner. [...] I asked for mine to be made without <sup>k</sup> \_\_\_ butter and <sup>l</sup> \_\_\_ guy who makes them **went nuts** and was really rude about it. He said that he couldn't do it with that number of people waiting.

- 2 Read the extracts again and choose the correct options to complete the expressions. Use a dictionary if necessary.
- 3 Use the underlined expressions from the extracts in the correct form to rewrite the parts of the sentences in brackets.

There's an ice cream shop here and even in midwinter there's a line of people all the way round the corner (up to the end of the street and left into the next).

- Bradley's house looked so fantastic after all the renovation that it \_\_\_\_\_ (was sold) for twice the original price.
- Reserving seats \_\_\_\_\_ (in advance) is always a good thing to do to ensure you don't miss out.
- With the bad weather and the awful food the picnic was a \_\_\_\_\_ (far from nice) experience.
- I'm 100 percent certain that James \_\_\_\_\_ (isn't brave enough) to ask for a promotion.
- Have you noticed that the food in the school canteen has \_\_\_\_\_ (got worse) lately? There must be a new cook.

## REMEMBER THIS

There are a number of idioms connected to food that you can use in informal situations:

*I asked for mine to be made without butter and the guy who makes them **went nuts**.*

4 Read REMEMBER THIS. Complete the definitions for each of the food idioms using the words from the box. Use a dictionary if necessary.

( cheese cucumber eggshells nuts pie )

go nuts – become crazy or extremely angry

- walk on \_\_\_\_\_ – behave sensitively around somebody in case you upset them
- be cool as a \_\_\_\_\_ – be very calm, not nervous or anxious
- be \_\_\_\_\_ in the sky – be a plan, hope or idea that will never happen
- be like chalk and \_\_\_\_\_ – be very different or opposites

5 Complete the sentences using the idioms from Exercise 4.

When I told Jake that I'd eaten the last of the bread, he went nuts. What an overreaction!

- Ever since Ralf failed his driving test, I've been \_\_\_\_\_. It's hardly my fault everyone keeps asking me about my new car.
- I'm so envious of Sarah. She never gets stressed or nervous – she's always \_\_\_\_\_.
- I couldn't believe it when I heard that Sami and Paula were working together on the science project. They're \_\_\_\_\_ and I thought they'd never get along.
- Rebecca's dream of being a professional ballet dancer is all \_\_\_\_\_. She doesn't practise enough.

## WORD STORE 3F | Adjectives

6 Complete the sentences with the correct words. The first letters are given.

These chips are so greasy – look how they're dripping!

- This steak is so s\_\_\_\_\_ I can barely cut it with this knife.
- Urgh! The milk is o\_\_\_\_\_. It already smells funny.
- Don't you find Chinese food rather b\_\_\_\_\_? I prefer much stronger flavours – Indian, for example.
- I do love Georgian cuisine, but it's incredibly s\_\_\_\_\_ and even a small portion leaves you full.
- Cherry tomatoes have a lower water content than regular tomatoes, so if you hate s\_\_\_\_\_ sandwiches, you should use them instead.
- A traditional English breakfast must include c\_\_\_\_\_ toast. Start your day with a crunch!
- When it comes to pancakes, give me something s\_\_\_\_\_ every time. I don't see the appeal of sweet pancakes with jam or chocolate, for example.



# 3.6

## SPEAKING

Responding appropriately  
in conversation

### 1 Cross out the incorrect option in each phrase.

- 1 So, I *gather* / *understand* / *mention* that ...
- 2 Your father *tells* / *appreciates* / *informs* me that ...
- 3 To be *completely* / *actually* / *totally* accurate ...
- 4 Well, I'm *afraid* / *sort of* / *almost*, though not exactly ...
- 5 That's very *kind* / *generous* / *correct*.
- 6 That sounds *interesting* / *impressed* / *intriguing*.

### 2 Complete the conversation with the words from the box. There are two extra words.

actually appreciate fact **gather**  
impressed informs intriguing  
matter so thoughtful way

**Alice:** So, Mackenzie, I gather you're quite the expert when it comes to food.

**Mackenzie:** Expert? Well, in a <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_, though not exactly an expert as such, Alice. I er ... I know a thing or two, though, yes.

**Alice:** I'm <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_, Mackenzie. You're so worldly!

**Mackenzie:** Thank you, Alice. Shall we order? Have you decided what you're having?

**Alice:** Well, <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_, not quite. This menu is all so complicated-sounding. I mean, do you know what *quinoa* is?

**Mackenzie:** *Quinoa*? Er ... I ... well yes, it's a type of fish, I believe, a freshwater fish, Asian in origin.

**Alice:** Fish? As a <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ of fact, I want to start eating more fish.

**Mackenzie:** Is that <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_?

**Alice:** Oh yes. It's very good for you, you know?

**Mackenzie:** It's a nice clean food, isn't it? The fish do all that swimming around in water. Fresh water, very clean indeed.

**Alice:** Clean, yes, and healthy. And, do you know what *silken tofu* is, Mackenzie?

**Mackenzie:** *Silken tofu*? Let me see. Yes, that's Turkish, I think. If I'm not mistaken, it's a type of chamois, or goat-antelope, Alice, with very smooth hair. Yes, in <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ as smooth as silk, hence the use of the word 'silken', you see?

**Alice:** I see, yes. That sounds <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_, Mackenzie, but I think I'll stick with the fish.

**Mackenzie:** Well then, why don't I order the boar and then we can try both?

**Alice:** That's very <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ of you, but you simply must order whatever you fancy. I insist.

**Mackenzie:** That's settled then. You have the fish and I'll take the chamois. Waiter!

**Waiter:** Welcome to Vine Street Vegetarian and Vegan Cuisine, sir, madam. May I take your order?

**Mackenzie:** Vegetarian and vegan?

**Alice:** Mackenzie?

### REMEMBER THIS

Use **so** as a simple way to begin a conversation, change the subject, fill a silence or introduce a question. This is very common in everyday speech.

*So, Mackenzie, I gather you're quite the expert when it comes to food.*

*So, I understand the new restaurant has opened, Pierre, congratulations!*

### 3 Complete the conversation. The first letters are given.



**Stephen:** Ladies and gentlemen, Pierre Blanco Marks, celebrity chef and restaurateur! Hello, Pierre, and welcome to the show.

**Pierre:** Hello, Stephen. Good evening, ladies and gentlemen.

**Stephen:** So, I understand the new restaurant has opened, Pierre, congratulations!

**Pierre:** You mean you haven't been yet, Stephen?

**Stephen:** Well, as a matter of <sup>1</sup>**f** \_\_\_\_\_, I tried but apparently I wasn't rich or famous enough to get a table.

**Pierre:** You don't <sup>2</sup>**s** \_\_\_\_\_! That's terrible. We'll get you a table, Stephen. I'll have a word with my people immediately after the show.

**Stephen:** Well, I <sup>3</sup>**a** \_\_\_\_\_ the offer Pierre, but I couldn't <sup>4</sup>**p** \_\_\_\_\_ accept a free meal.

**Pierre:** Who said anything about a free meal?

**Stephen:** Pierre, your former colleague and co-star Johnnie Gulliver was here on the show a couple of weeks ago and he <sup>5</sup>**m** \_\_\_\_\_ that you are famous amongst your fellow chefs for knowing lots of fascinating food facts.

**Pierre:** Well, that's not quite <sup>6</sup>**t** \_\_\_\_\_, I'm afraid. To be completely <sup>7</sup>**a** \_\_\_\_\_, what I have is a head full of useless food-based information.

**Stephen:** Didn't I <sup>8</sup>**h** \_\_\_\_\_ you say that you have one or two facts to share with us here this evening?

**Pierre:** Indeed, I do. Did you know that in some Japanese restaurants they have over 200 ways of serving tofu?

**Stephen:** Oh <sup>9</sup>**r** \_\_\_\_\_? Well, I can't say I'm a fan of the product.

**Pierre:** It's true. I'm planning a field trip, actually. I'm sure it'll give us some ideas about the menu in the new place.

**Stephen:** Tofu 200 ways ... Pierre, I think I might pass on that offer of a table after all!



WRITING

3.7

A proposal



1 Complete the advice using the words from the box. There are three extra words.

assist break convince course distinct entire formal logically primary show

The primary goal of a proposal is to <sup>1</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ the reader to follow the <sup>2</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ of action you recommend. You should write in a reasonably <sup>3</sup>\_\_\_\_\_, impersonal style. To <sup>4</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ you in presenting the information clearly, divide the proposal into <sup>5</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ parts using appropriate headings. In addition to these headings, remember to give the <sup>6</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ proposal a neutral title.

2 Read the notice from a school's website and then the introduction to the proposal. Tick the problem the student has chosen to address.

A large amount of money was recently donated to the school by a former student with the provision that it is used to address a problem and improve the school for all the students. It has been decided that the money will be spent on developing the unused land next to the car park. The following relevant problems have been identified by the student council:

Students would like to learn more about how to grow plants for food, but there are no facilities. ☐

There is a lack of natural habitat for local wildlife in the vicinity of the school. ☐

The school relies on fossil fuels but would like to explore how renewable energy might be used instead. ☐

Students are encouraged to cycle to school, yet there is nowhere secure for them to store their bikes. ☐

Please submit proposals analysing one of these problems and suggesting how the money might be used to develop the land in order to provide a solution.

3 Read the whole proposal and put the following stages in order.

- Include a neutral title. ☐
- State your recommendations and give reasons and justifications. ☐
- Present the current situation. ☐
- Strongly suggest that the reader takes the recommended action. ☐
- State the aim of the proposal. ☐
- Provide any information needed to explain why you are going to recommend changes. ☐
- Introduce the issue and say why it is important. ☐
- Summarise the benefits of your recommendations. ☐

Proposal for investment in school land

Introduction

Green areas are few and far between nowadays, yet they are **integral** to the **well-being** of all living things. The <sup>1</sup>*reason / purpose* of this proposal is to discuss the lack of such space near our school and <sup>2</sup>*recommend / ask* how we could use the recent generous donation to address this.

Current situation

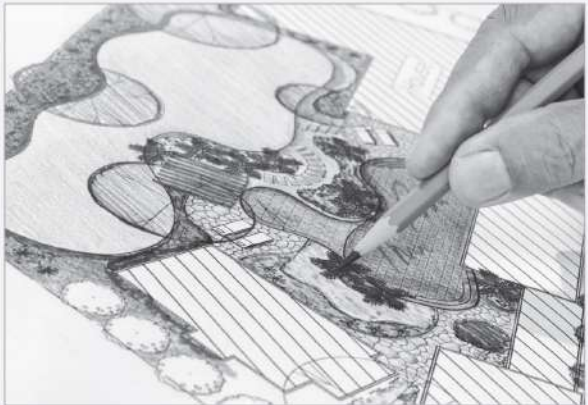
The last two years have witnessed the sad disappearance of the natural habitat that once surrounded the school. First, land was sold to housing developers, next the car park was extended, and most recently, a new bus **terminus** was built at the top of the school drive. All this development took place on formerly green land, and has resulted in **drab** views from the classrooms and the virtual **eradication** of wildlife from the area.

Recommendations

In <sup>3</sup>*conclusion / response*, I suggest the development of a small nature reserve on the unused land. This would encourage local wildlife back to the area, providing a more pleasant environment and the potential for scientific study. Students could be involved in the establishment of the reserve by planting trees and building and erecting nest boxes for birds. Furthermore, I <sup>4</sup>*encourage / propose* that a large pond is dug as part of the reserve so that a wider variety of flora and fauna can set up home. Pathways and benches could also be provided, which would mean staff and students could enjoy the space.

Conclusion

The ongoing nature of the project <sup>5</sup>*means / results in* the investment will pay **dividends** long into the future and remind successive generations of students of the value of nature. In this world of concrete and glass, I <sup>6</sup>*urge / hope* the school to invest in something more **wholesome**.



4 Choose the correct words to complete the proposal.

5 Underline examples of the following ways of expressing cause and effect in the text.

- Two linking phrases
- A comment clause to refer back to the whole main clause
- A participle clause to express the result of the main clause

6 Combine the pairs of sentences using the words in bold.

Many students have no experience of growing their own food. This means they have no idea how satisfying it can be. **which**

Many students have no experience of growing their own food, which means they have no idea how satisfying it can be.

1 The school relies entirely on fossil fuels. As a result, energy bills are high. **resulting**

2 The response to our 'Cycle to School' scheme was fantastic. This led to a huge increase in the number of bikes being brought to school. **leading**

3 I recommend the installation of solar panels on the unused land. In this way, the school can save money and students can learn about solar power. **so that**

4 I propose that the students build and maintain a kitchen garden on the unused land. As a result, they will feel closer to nature and gain a better appreciation of the value of fresh food. **with the result that**

5 Four bicycles have been stolen this month alone. This demonstrates how pressing the need for a secure bike park is. **which**

7 Complete the definitions with the correct forms of the words in bold in the proposal.

Something described as being **integral** forms a necessary part of something else.

- 1 A \_\_\_\_\_ is the station or stop at the end of a bus route or railway line.
- 2 If something pays or brings \_\_\_\_\_, it is very useful and brings a lot of advantages, especially later, in the future.
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_ is the feeling of being comfortable, healthy and happy.
- 4 If something is described as \_\_\_\_\_, it is not bright in colour in a way that stops you from feeling cheerful.
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_ is the act of completely getting rid of something such as a species, disease or social problem.
- 6 If something is described as \_\_\_\_\_, it is likely to make you healthy or is considered to have a good moral effect.

8 Complete the sentences with the words from Exercise 7.

Colin had such a tough day at school that he dropped off on the bus and only woke up at the **terminus**.

- 1 The health and \_\_\_\_\_ of our patients is this hospital's number one concern.
- 2 Regular exercise and a healthy diet now will pay \_\_\_\_\_ in later life.
- 3 After his wife left, Philip moved into a \_\_\_\_\_ little apartment, which did nothing to lift his depression.
- 4 Has the studio's \_\_\_\_\_ reputation been tarnished after complaints about the violence in its latest film?
- 5 Thankfully, the \_\_\_\_\_ of Ebola is now complete and hospital occupancy rates have returned to normal.
- 6 Chilli is an \_\_\_\_\_ part of the flavour of a good curry, so if you don't like your food spicy, order something else.

REMEMBER THIS

Use the **passive voice** in proposals to help make them sound more formal and impersonal.

SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

9 Read the notice in Exercise 2 again. Then follow the instructions below.

- 1 Choose one of the remaining problem areas identified by the student council.
- 2 Brainstorm ways in which the land and donation could be used to provide a solution.
- 3 Write a proposal analysing the problem and making recommendations.

SHOW THAT YOU'VE CHECKED

Finished? Always check your writing (especially in the exam!) Can you tick ✓ everything on this list?

In my proposal:

- I have begun with a neutral title. ☐
- I have divided the proposal into sections and given each an appropriate heading. ☐
- in the introduction, I have mentioned why the issue or problem is important and stated the aim of the proposal. ☐
- in the main body I have presented the current situation and explained why I am going to recommend changes. ☐
- in the main body I have stated my recommendations and given justifications. ☐
- in the conclusion, I have summarised the benefits of my recommendations and suggested that the reader takes action. ☐
- I have used a formal and impersonal style. ☐
- I have checked my spelling. ☐
- I have checked my handwriting is neat enough for someone else to read. ☐



3.8 SELF-CHECK

VOCABULARY

1 Choose the correct option.

Why don't you add a *(knob)* / clove / sprig of butter to the salmon before you put it in the oven?

- 1 What I love on a Sunday morning is the smell of fresh coffee and fried eggs *chinking* / sizzling / clinking.
- 2 Whenever my sister Sharon was told to share her presents with me, she had a crying *fit* / sip / stick and started throwing things around.
- 3 Don't eat too much of this pudding. It's quite *bland* / slimy / stodgy and it'll make you feel heavy and sleepy.
- 4 The aim of *nutritional* / occupational / cognitive therapy is to restore independence to any person suffering from an injury, illness or disability.
- 5 There's far too much *sensitive* / fuzzy / processed food instead of natural products in our diets nowadays.

/5

2 Complete the sentences with the correct words. The first and last letters are given.

Before you go to see a nutritionist, you have to write down some *burning* questions you'd like to ask her.

- 1 It'd be great if you used a pinch of freshly grated *n*\_\_\_\_\_g in this recipe for baked leeks. Not too much though, because it's quite a strong flavour.
- 2 If you add too much milk to your cereal, it will go *s*\_\_\_\_\_y and won't have any bite.
- 3 It's not that I'm allergic to seafood, but I've never taken to oysters or other *s*\_\_\_\_\_h.
- 4 Everybody knows you're eating crisps because of the *c*\_\_\_\_\_y noise they make.
- 5 My brother and I loved Grandma's rice pudding served hot, but the longer it sat getting cold, the more sticky and *g*\_\_\_\_\_s it became.

/5

3 Complete the text with the correct forms of the words in brackets.

A jockey's diet

For some, food could be one of simple *pleasures* (please) in life. For me – a professional jockey – it's something that I have to watch closely. And although my diet is not too strict, I have to avoid some dishes which I find <sup>1</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (tooth), like pizza or heavy chocolate cakes. First of all, I have to think of the <sup>2</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (nutrition) value of everything I eat, but luckily I don't have many <sup>3</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (crave). That said, if there is ice cream in my freezer, it's hard to stop at just one <sup>4</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (spoon). I have been known to wolf down the entire tub! I am supposed to eat little and often. I tend to pick at something small at lunchtime. However, if I have binged on ice cream, I won't have a meal. I never eat after eight and if sleep is <sup>5</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (elude), I drink chamomile tea.

/5

GRAMMAR

4 Complete the sentences with the appropriate verbs in the correct form.

Since the weather has turned foul, I suggest we *put* off the barbecue until it improves.

- 1 If I'm not mistaken, we've \_\_\_\_\_ out three times this week. Can't we cook something at home?
- 2 Some children have no manners! Little Tom Sanders \_\_\_\_\_ down his dinner instead of chewing it first.
- 3 We can't just \_\_\_\_\_ for a walnut-free cake. We have to check if the whole meal contains no nuts, because Sue is allergic to them.
- 4 Scientists have always wondered why small children \_\_\_\_\_ at certain foods or even refuse to eat them.
- 5 If you don't have enough butter to make this dish, you can \_\_\_\_\_ without it and use olive oil instead.

/5

5 Match the verbs from box A with suitable words from box B to make phrasal verbs. Then complete the text with the phrasal verbs in the correct form.

A ( cut end fill get give snack )

B ( back on on rid of up up up )

- I: Jeff, how did a *star* *end up* in a food business?  
J: It actually all began with my grandmother, who would spend hours turning all the fruit from her orchard into marmalade, jams, and juices. As I always loved fruit and kept <sup>1</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ it, it was great to be around helping and of course <sup>2</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ myself \_\_\_\_\_ with the finished product until my stomach hurt. After my grandma's death nobody wanted to keep the house and the orchard, so we <sup>3</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ it and I became a student at Medical School. However, after working in a hospital for over twenty years and constantly telling my patients to <sup>4</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ fats and carbohydrates, making sure that smokers would finally <sup>5</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ their nasty habit, I decided to quit and go back to what I used to love most. I set up a company that produces jams and juices with no artificial additives.

/5

6 Complete the sentences with the correct particle.

It wasn't until Brooke spread *out* the plans of the building that she could visualise her restaurant there.

- 1 Please be careful when you dish \_\_\_\_\_ the pudding to ensure that everybody gets some.
- 2 Did you see how quickly he gobbled \_\_\_\_\_ the stew? He must have been starving.
- 3 The waiter picked up a pineapple and sliced the top \_\_\_\_\_ in front of us. We were truly impressed.
- 4 In my family, Sunday lunch drags \_\_\_\_\_ for hours.
- 5 My nephew has really shot \_\_\_\_\_ since I saw him last. He must have grown by a foot at least.

/5

USE OF ENGLISH

7 Choose the correct answer A, B, C or D.

The 'fast-casual' phenomenon

In many countries the 'fast-casual' restaurant is currently gaining ground as a popular sector of the food industry, closing the gap between fast food outlets and the opposite extreme: the more traditional 'B dining' experience, in which <sup>1</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ tablecloths and silver cutlery play a key part in laying the tables.

Although popular fast-casual chains such as Nandos chicken and Shake Shack Burger restaurants may be slightly more expensive than the ever-present '2\_\_\_\_\_ food' alternatives, their food is advertised as being made with <sup>3</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ quality ingredients and freshly prepared on the premises. <sup>4</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ of this the restaurants appeal to both <sup>5</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ eaters, who are able to choose exactly what they want to eat, and to the growing number of customers who have <sup>6</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ and can't eat anything which may contain, for example, a trace of nuts.

The <sup>7</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ tones to be found in more formal eateries are a far cry from the buzzy, noisy atmosphere in these new restaurants, many of which are bending over <sup>8</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ to make sure they attract and hold on to their new clientele.

- |                  |               |
|------------------|---------------|
| A good           | B fine        |
| C excellent      | D delicious   |
| 1 A fatigued     | B stringy     |
| C starched       | D aesthetic   |
| 2 A junk         | B waste       |
| C scrap          | D trash       |
| 3 A considerable | B high        |
| C substantial    | D special     |
| 4 A Due          | B In addition |
| C Despite        | D As a result |
| 5 A exact        | B particular  |
| C fussy          | D selective   |
| 6 A allergies    | B reactions   |
| C sensitivities  | D aversions   |
| 7 A sizzling     | B hummed      |
| C hushed         | D peaceful    |
| 8 A sideways     | B backwards   |
| C forwards       | D downwards   |

/8

8 Complete the text with one word in each gap.

The cost of healthy eating

Visiting my local supermarket to stock *up* on highly expensive soy sausages, almond milk, coconut water, or any other food craze which has recently hit the media, it feels that healthy food is taking <sup>1</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ our lives completely. The shelves are groaning with a huge variety of food products claiming to make us healthier, which surely <sup>2</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ be a good thing.

Yet it has not always been like this. In recent years there has been a <sup>3</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ deal of concern about the amount of obesity, triggered by our high consumption of fat, salt and sugar. Ironically, it is now the turn of so-called 'healthy' food to come under attack for the impact it is having <sup>4</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ the environment.

Soy sausages, for example, may be responsible for causing even <sup>5</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ deforestation than real meat does. And the demand for almonds means that water is now running out in California. And so on! So as <sup>6</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ as costing us a lot of money, our search for new food can have a disastrous effect on the planet too.

/6

9 Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first. Do not change the words in capitals. Use between four and six words in each gap.

We'll visit you some other time because of the food poisoning we're suffering from. **OFF**

We need to *put off visiting you/put visiting you off* because of the food poisoning we're suffering from.

- 1 I know that the syrup tastes disgusting but you need to finish it before you can go and play again. **DRINK**  
You can go and play again provided you \_\_\_\_\_ first however disgusting it is.
- 2 If you continue to eat crisps with every meal, you'll definitely put on weight. **ON**  
You'll definitely put on weight if \_\_\_\_\_ with every meal.
- 3 I haven't had a proper look yet at your business plan, but I glanced at it the other day and it looks promising. **FLICKED**  
Your business plan looks promising although I \_\_\_\_\_ so far.
- 4 Because the food was so much fresher than before, we were pleasantly surprised. **IMPROVEMENT**  
There was so \_\_\_\_\_ of the food that we were pleasantly surprised.
- 5 My proposal is to let him choose the menu for himself. **RECOMMEND**  
I would \_\_\_\_\_ decision about the menu.
- 6 If the government invests money in school meals, educational standards will increase dramatically. **RESULT**  
Government investment in school meals \_\_\_\_\_ up dramatically.

/6

Total /20

Total /30



# 4 The new thing

4.1

## VOCABULARY

Music industry • compounds • phrases to describe success and failure  
• forming nouns from adjectives

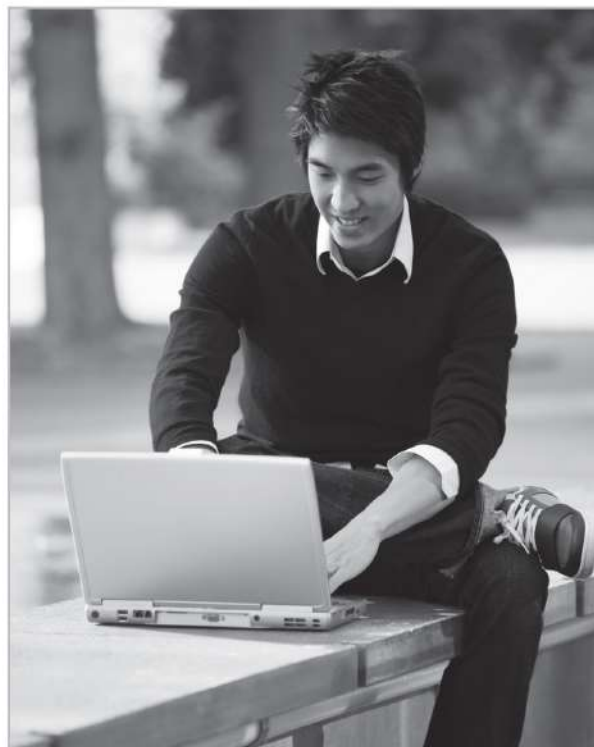
### SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

#### 1 Choose the least likely collocation.

- 1 **attach** an app / a file / a photo
- 2 **bookmark** a website / a page / your profile
- 3 **download** an attachment / music / your status
- 4 **log on to** a Wi-Fi network / Facebook / a comment
- 5 **post** a clip / a link / a homepage
- 6 **share** a video / music / an app
- 7 **stream** music / a clip / a link
- 8 **update** your status / a comment / an app

#### 2 Choose the correct word to complete each notification.

- 1 <sup>1</sup>Update / Bookmark our page and visit us every day with just one click!
- 2 Click here to <sup>2</sup>download / log on to two free sample tracks from Vibert's new album.
- 3 Your file is too large to <sup>3</sup>attach / share to this email. Send as link?
- 4 <sup>4</sup>Post / Stream tonight's episode of Places Unknown for free at CNM.com from 7 p.m. onwards.
- 5 <sup>5</sup>Update / Attach virus definitions before scanning?
- 6 Enter your ID and password to <sup>6</sup>log on to / post the system.



### WORD STORE 4A | Compounds

#### 3 Match the words in boxes A and B to create compounds and then use them to complete the text.

- A { back brain fan industry  
main purpose sound }
- B { base built child lash  
proof standard stream }

**Luxurylife .com**

**Home entertainment**

There has been a recent consumer backlash against the poor quality speakers fitted as standard to most laptops and televisions. If you are looking to upgrade and happen to have \$300,000 to spare, then perhaps the Goldmund Apologue Speaker System is for you. The <sup>1</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ of Goldmund, a company synonymous with the very highest end of audio-design for the last thirty years, these speakers are some of the finest money can buy.

Leaving the <sup>2</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ trailing far, far behind, the Apologue system is <sup>3</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ to provide the absolute pinnacle of sound quality. With such a price tag, these are clearly not intended for the <sup>4</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ consumer but rather have their <sup>5</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ among the bankers and rock stars that can afford such indulgences. The raw power of the speakers may leave neighbours wishing for <sup>6</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ walls, although the fact is that those who can afford a pair probably don't have neighbours living anywhere close enough to be disturbed.

### WORD STORE 4B | Success and failure

#### 4 Complete the text with the words from the box.

- { ascendancy came commercial  
downturn herald predominant  
resurgence started way wayside }

**businessfocus.com**

**Fabulous Flops and Famous Failures**

We all make mistakes, even big corporations with multi-million dollar budgets. Here's a list of some of the biggest failures of recent years - don't expect any of them to be enjoying a resurgence anytime soon!

\* In 1989 Pepsi tried to target the 'breakfast cola drinker' with a colourless version of its cola. The product was a <sup>1</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ flop and after just a year had fallen by the <sup>2</sup>\_\_\_\_\_.

\* When the DVD <sup>3</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ into prominence in the late 1990s, it was considered the ultimate solution, but barely a decade later the race for an upgrade was on among tech companies. Sony won the contest with its Blu-ray format. Although this remained in the <sup>4</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ for some time, it has been overtaken by Ultra HD Blu-ray, which is now the <sup>5</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ choice for high-quality viewing - though 'choice' may be misleading as this format is incompatible with regular Blu-ray players.

\* In the late 2000s, Google decided it needed to compete with popular virtual world 'Second Life' and so released 'Lively' in July 2008, expecting the general public to <sup>6</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ its arrival. Unfortunately, this coincided with a major <sup>7</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ in the economy and as global prosperity <sup>8</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ to decline and good times gave <sup>9</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ to bad, 'Lively' died a death just four months later.

### WORD STORE 4C | Nouns from adjectives

#### 5 Complete the sentences with the correct forms of the words in brackets.

- This app has clearly been developed with an awareness (aware) of the needs of novice users such as myself.
- 1 3D cinema is currently in the \_\_\_\_\_ (ascend) as more and more films are being produced using the very latest cameras.
  - 2 The \_\_\_\_\_ (popular) of dystopian fiction for young adults has finally begun to wane.
  - 3 What this mini-projector lacks in style, it more than makes up for in \_\_\_\_\_ (portable).
  - 4 Could this be the product to <sup>4</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ crack Apple's \_\_\_\_\_ (predominate) in the mobile market?
  - 5 Sam Smith first came to \_\_\_\_\_ (prominent) in 2012 after appearing on Disclosure's first album.
  - 6 Will cassette tapes see a \_\_\_\_\_ (resurge) to match that of vinyl?

### WORD STORE 4D | EXTRA Nouns

#### 6 Complete the sentences with the correct forms of the words in capitals.

- AUTHENTIC**
- a Use authentic ink cartridge replacements and earn discounts on our whole range of products.
  - b The painting has been withdrawn from auction until its authenticity can be proved beyond doubt.

- 1 CARELESS**
- a Carlos read the instructions \_\_\_\_\_ and failed to notice that the battery needed to be charged for four hours before use.
  - b There is simply no room for \_\_\_\_\_ when you are working with highly infectious patients.

- 2 RELUCTANT**
- a The shop assistant \_\_\_\_\_ agreed to refund Sam's money after his multiple complaints.
  - b Most breeders will admit to a certain \_\_\_\_\_ when it is time to send the kittens off to their new homes.

- 3 CONSISTENT**
- a \_\_\_\_\_ is key when it comes to training a dog. Decide on the rules and stick to them.
  - b Esmeralda used to be teased about her name, but now she's older, people \_\_\_\_\_ say how beautiful it is.

- 4 SIMPLE**
- a Don't be fooled by the camera's apparent \_\_\_\_\_. It is, in fact, a highly complex piece of equipment.
  - b Look, I can't make it any \_\_\_\_\_. If you don't pay me right now, the next time you see me will be in court.

#### 7 Complete the advert. Some letters are given.

**indiajobs.com**

FortKnox Security seeks full-time security guards in Mumbai, Delhi, Bangalore and Hyderabad

With the growth of <sup>1</sup>a\_f\_u\_n\_e in India, there is now an <sup>2</sup>a\_u\_d\_n\_e of opportunities for domestic security firms, as safety-conscious families look to invest in their security and <sup>3</sup>p\_i\_a\_y. The <sup>4</sup>e\_f\_c\_i\_e\_e\_s of FortKnox Security Systems depends on the <sup>5</sup>d\_l\_g\_n\_e, professionalism and bravery of our quick-response security guards. If you think you have what it takes, contact us at [recruit@fortknox.in](mailto:recruit@fortknox.in)

### SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

#### 8 Choose the correct answer A-C.

- 1 Investing in \_\_\_\_\_ walls was the best thing we ever did. We hardly hear the neighbours now.  
A watertight B soundproof C see through
- 2 Unfortunately for them, the band's original \_\_\_\_\_ of adolescent girls have all grown up.  
A fan base B supporters C followers
- 3 Efforts to develop virtual reality headsets appear to have fallen by the \_\_\_\_\_ in recent years.  
A sideline B sideways C wayside
- 4 The gang's preference for leather boots appears to have given \_\_\_\_\_ to colourful trainers.  
A out B way C up
- 5 Once mocked as unimaginative, the humble prawn cocktail is currently enjoying a \_\_\_\_\_.  
A reappearance B remembrance C resurgence
- 6 The \_\_\_\_\_ of this mixer should prove very popular with DJs who play at several different clubs each weekend.  
A popularity B portability C prominence
- 7 The \_\_\_\_\_ of English as the global language of business stands to change as Mandarin Chinese becomes increasingly important.  
A predominance B authenticity C effectiveness
- 8 Until general levels of \_\_\_\_\_ increase, sales of such expensive technology are likely to remain low.  
A abundance B affluence C ascendancy
- 9 Consumer groups are demanding greater \_\_\_\_\_ in the quality of electronics sold by supermarkets.  
A consistency B carelessness C diligence
- 10 After initial \_\_\_\_\_, teachers now seem happy enough to receive students' homework by email.  
A awareness B privacy C reluctance



## READING

4.2

Data storage • verbs  
• word building • collocationsFour writers comment  
on digital data storage

**A** If you want to make sure your treasured photographs are available for future generations to enjoy, then the safest option is not to back them up on your hard drive, or store them remotely in the cloud, but to print them out. Recent history has shown that, as technology advances, data storage formats such as audio cassettes, floppy disks or video tapes quickly become **obsolete** making the data they hold **inaccessible**. With this in mind, if we want to preserve our digital lives in the same way we preserve our history in books, we need to make sure that the digital objects we create will be available in centuries to come. One way to do this would be to create a system which will not only store a digital format but hold details of the software and operating system needed to access it, so it can be recreated in the future. Until such a system is in place, printing out your photos and sticking them in the family album remains your best option.

**B** Storing files remotely rather than on fragile discs or **clunky** hard drives certainly proves helpful for professional as well as home users. One of the biggest advantages of using cloud storage is that it helps to add another layer\* of protection for **irreplaceable** and precious files. Secure locations are chosen for the backups that are physically removed from originals. As a result, data kept within the cloud services remains absolutely safe and secure from all types of **unauthorised** use or access. However, there are **potential** pitfalls to storing your data in the cloud and, despite media scaremongering about security issues, perhaps the biggest downside is the likelihood\* of technical failure or connectivity issues rendering your files unavailable at just the moment you need to access them.

**C** Cloud storage removes the need for portable data storage devices and therefore tackles the problem of ageing formats and hardware. However, as recent leaks\* of celebrities' private photographs have proved, the cloud may not be a safe place to store personal files. With certain settings, anything you do on your phone is uploaded to the cloud then pulled down by your other devices. Convenient? Yes, but the sacrifice\* required is **compromised** security because your data is actually sitting on a server in 'the cloud' on someone else's computer and is therefore **vulnerable** to hackers. There are, of course, ways of encrypting data or stopping it from being uploaded to the cloud but in my opinion, the most effective way of ensuring that sensitive information does not get into the wrong hands is not to record it on a cloud-based device in the first place.

**D** Research suggests that although some storage devices may last longer than a decade, others may stop working after little more than a year. For this reason, it is vital to regularly create and update copies of your most important data on different storage devices. Even then, considering the rapid evolution of data storage formats, there is no guarantee that your files and photos will be accessible even a few years from now. Cloud storage is being hailed as a solution, but science is looking to nature to find the best way to store data in a manner that will guarantee its availability far into the future. Researchers in Switzerland believe the answer may lie in the data storage system that exists in every living cell: DNA. Fossils\* prove that in the right conditions, strands\* of DNA can store data for close to a million years. Moreover, its strands are so compact and complex that just one gram of DNA is theoretically capable of containing all the data of Internet giants such as Google and Facebook, with room to spare.

## GLOSSARY

**layer** (n) – one of several levels in a complicated system, organisation or set of ideas

**likelihood** (n) – the degree to which something can reasonably be expected to happen

**leak** (n, v) – a situation in which secret information is deliberately given to a newspaper, website, etc.

**sacrifice** (n, v) – when you decide not to have something valuable in order to get something that is more important

**fossil** (n) – the shape of an ancient plant or animal preserved in rock

**strand** (n) – a single thin piece of thread, wire, hair, DNA, etc.

## 1 Read the four texts and answer the questions below.

Which writer

- 1 refers to a specific media incident to justify a point of view? ☐
- 2 reports a biotechnological innovation in storage? ☐
- 3 suggests an old-fashioned **s**olution to a modern problem? ☐
- 4 questions the validity of an attitude taken by the media? ☐

## 2 Read the four texts again. For questions 1–4, choose from texts A–D. The texts may be chosen more than once.

Which writer

- 1 agrees with A about the importance of finding long-term data storage solutions? ☐
- 2 is concerned about a different problem with data storage from the other writers? ☐
- 3 disagrees with C about the risks involved in data storage? ☐
- 4 agrees with B about the importance of backing up data? ☐

## 3 Complete the collocations with verbs from the text. The first letters are given. Use the information in brackets to help you.

**r**ender (cause something to be – text B) something unavailable/harmless/useless, etc.

- 1 **r**\_\_\_\_\_ (get rid of – text C) the need for something
- 2 **t**\_\_\_\_\_ (try to deal with – text C) a problem
- 3 **I**\_\_\_\_\_ to (depend on for advice/help/a solution, etc. – text D) nature/technology/your parents, etc.
- 4 **h**\_\_\_\_\_ (describe someone or something as being very good – text D) something as a solution/success/masterpiece, etc.
- 5 **p**\_\_\_\_\_ (turn out to be – text B) helpful, useful, impossible, etc.
- 6 **r**\_\_\_\_\_ (need – text C) a sacrifice/patience/concentration, etc.

## 4 Complete the sentences with the correct forms of the verbs from Exercise 3.

The air conditioning **was rendered** useless by the power cut, so they decided to sleep out on the balcony.

- 1 To complete all seventeen levels and finish the game \_\_\_\_\_ a level of dedication I just don't have.
- 2 In certain schools teachers are \_\_\_\_\_ to the past to try to improve discipline in their classrooms.
- 3 It \_\_\_\_\_ impossible to pick the cherries from the highest branches, so they were left for the lucky birds.
- 4 The band's new album has been \_\_\_\_\_ as their best yet.
- 5 The government has appointed a new committee in order to \_\_\_\_\_ the problem of obesity among the country's children.
- 6 In the 1990s, the need for aerals on mobile phones \_\_\_\_\_ by advances in technology.

## 5 Match the words in bold in the text to the definitions.

- having the capacity to develop into something in the future **potential**
- 1 solid, heavy and old-fashioned \_\_\_\_\_
  - 2 in danger of attack or harm \_\_\_\_\_
  - 3 unique; incapable of being replaced \_\_\_\_\_
  - 4 no longer made or used, old-fashioned \_\_\_\_\_
  - 5 caused to function less effectively \_\_\_\_\_
  - 6 unable to be reached \_\_\_\_\_
  - 7 lacking official approval or permission \_\_\_\_\_

## 6 Look at the vocabulary in lesson 4.2 in the Student's Book. Then complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets.

Fiona went to such **expense** (expend) in preparation for the party and half the guests didn't even turn up.

- 1 The support of such a high-profile scientist really helps to \_\_\_\_\_ (legitimate) our project.
- 2 The crowd's disappointment at the election \_\_\_\_\_ (manifestation) itself in their distraught faces.
- 3 The students came up with an \_\_\_\_\_ (ingenuity) solution to the problem of graffiti at their school.
- 4 Bradbury was a highly \_\_\_\_\_ (accomplish) sculptor whose work has been honoured with many awards.
- 5 Mum's Polish and Dad's English so, at home, we \_\_\_\_\_ (alternative) randomly between the two languages.
- 6 Manage your time carefully while revising in order to \_\_\_\_\_ (optimal) your productivity.
- 7 As Confucius said, 'Real knowledge is to know the extent of your \_\_\_\_\_ (ignore).'



## WORD STORE 4E | Collocations

## 7 Complete the sentences with the correct forms of the words from the box. There are three extra words.

edge improvement limit line  
performance picture record time

I don't mind helping you with your homework, but I draw the **line** at letting you simply copy mine.

- 1 This could be the race in which new \_\_\_\_\_ are set and personal bests are smashed.
- 2 Our new foam sole technology enhances both comfort and \_\_\_\_\_ on the field.
- 3 European investment has fuelled \_\_\_\_\_ in public transport and housing provision.
- 4 The latest concept car from Ferrari pushes the \_\_\_\_\_ of electric car performance.



4.3

GRAMMAR

Infinitives

SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

1 Complete the text with one word in each gap.

PRIVACY CONCERNS

Google Glass – a hi-tech device similar to a pair of glasses – was a revolutionary invention that used voice control to allow wearers <sup>1</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ access a wide range of functions. Its built-in camera <sup>2</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ users take images and record video of anything around them while also allowing access to a range of Internet tools. Google Glass was created in order <sup>3</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ provide users with a flexible, convenient, hands-free technology. But while the device <sup>4</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ to be the answer to all the inconveniences of using a mobile phone, as soon as Google began to sell it <sup>5</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ the public, it managed <sup>6</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ arouse a good deal of controversy. Not long after its release, the company took the decision <sup>7</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ stop producing the device for public use. What caused them to <sup>8</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ this? Because of privacy concerns, more and more businesses started warning people <sup>9</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ to use the device on their premises. Cinema managers made customers hand in their devices so as <sup>10</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ prevent the illegal copying of films, and restaurant patrons wearing Google Glass were reminded that everyone ought <sup>11</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ have the right to privacy. Faced with these issues, Google realised that the device was not suited to public use, and in 2015 decided <sup>12</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ focus on commercial uses tailored to specific business needs.

REMEMBER THIS

He **made** me **write** it. vs I **was made to write** it.

- 2 ★ Replace the phrases in bold with to-infinitives. Use between two and four words.
- We were glad **we could** refer to online dictionaries during the English lesson. *to be able to*
- 1 Julie ran her slide presentation by me **with the intention of ensuring** that it was correct. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 The tutor must have had a good reason **for punishing** Robbie. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 This is the most useful gadget **that is used** by sportspeople. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 The new student expected **that the school would provide him** with a free tablet. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 All mobile phones **must be** handed in before the lessons. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 **Preparing** PowerPoint presentations for History lessons has become really common. \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 I didn't want to switch off my phone, so the examiners insisted on giving it to them. In fact, I was **left no choice**. \_\_\_\_\_

3 ★★★ Turn the verbs from the box into to-infinitives and complete the text. Sometimes you need to make the verb negative.

become   do   experience   fill  
form   live   make   miss   repeat  
save   see   support   turn   write

Films Worth Watching Again: *Her*

In one of his most intriguing films, *Her*, director Spike Jonze tries *to make* us believe that it may not be easy <sup>1</sup>\_\_\_\_\_, or love, in the future. Joaquin Phoenix plays the role of Theodore Twombly, an emotionally bruised man, whose job is <sup>2</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ beautiful personal letters for customers who choose <sup>3</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ this themselves. Theodore is anxious <sup>4</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ over a new leaf after he fails <sup>5</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ his marriage to Catherine (Rooney Mara). But this time he opts for a highly advanced operating system so as <sup>6</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ his old mistakes. The system's name is Samantha (voiced by Scarlett Johansson) and, strange as it might seem, their conversations manage <sup>7</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ a gap in Theodore's life.

*Her* is a gentle satire on human as opposed to artificial intelligence. The viewer is eager <sup>8</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ Theodore in his pursuit of happiness. Phoenix is joined on screen by Amy Adams, whose character, Amy, is Theodore's best friend. According to her, connecting with another being is something that everybody is eager <sup>9</sup>\_\_\_\_\_, and she wonders why it should be any less normal <sup>10</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ close to an operating system than to a human being.

Whether the film was correct in its predictions on the nature of future relationships, remains <sup>11</sup>\_\_\_\_\_. In the meantime, be sure <sup>12</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ it on VOD or Blu-ray and see for yourselves if Theodore was lucky <sup>13</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ his most meaningful bond with an artificial intelligence.

SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

- 4 Complete the sentences with the words in brackets in the correct forms. Do not change the word order. Use between five and six words in each gap.
- I'd like to return these light-up trainers because they *fail to flash at night*. (fail/flash/night)
- 1 This electronic fork is meant \_\_\_\_\_ (warn/not/eat) too quickly.
- 2 Please tell others that they \_\_\_\_\_ (be/not/be/use) any electronic devices right now.
- 3 Susan was lucky \_\_\_\_\_ (not/hit) by a car yesterday. I suppose she will never go to the city centre wearing headphones again.
- 4 Despite the students' wish \_\_\_\_\_ (allow/use) laptops in lesson, the school refused to agree to it.
- 5 Before our last school trip, we \_\_\_\_\_ (make/not/bring) our games consoles with us.
- 6 This company was \_\_\_\_\_ (last/start/produce) wearable devices.





# USE OF ENGLISH

4.4

Sentence modifiers

## 1 Choose the odd one out in each group.

- 1 Obviously / Curiously / Interestingly
- 2 Honestly / Frankly / Certainly
- 3 In actual fact / In truth / In a way
- 4 Strikingly / Surprisingly / Plainly
- 5 Incidentally / Personally / By the way
- 6 Annoyingly / Hopefully / Potentially

## 2 Replace the words in bold with the phrases from the box.

all things considered   anyway   fortunately  
in fact   sadly   ~~sort of~~   to some extent  
to tell the truth   without doubt

- A: You sound **somewhat** / sort of downcast, Ellen.  
Is something wrong?
- B: Well, my mum has been to the parent-teacher meeting today, so **1actually** / \_\_\_\_\_ I'm devastated.
- A: What did you get up to this time? Is it the report card?
- B: **2Luckily** / \_\_\_\_\_, the grades are OK. The tutor complained about my lack of concentration and, **3admittedly** / \_\_\_\_\_, I do find it hard to focus.
- A: But why?
- B: **4Undeniably** / \_\_\_\_\_, my smartphone has something to do with it. I constantly need to look at it. **5Unfortunately** / \_\_\_\_\_, I can't help it.
- A: I must admit I sympathise with you **6to a certain degree** / \_\_\_\_\_. Why don't you just put it in your school bag, though?
- B: Chris, **7generally speaking** / \_\_\_\_\_, you're right. **8At any rate** / \_\_\_\_\_, the problem's solved.
- A: How so?
- B: My parents decided to take my phone away for a month.

## 3 Turn the pairs of words in bold into adverbs and then choose the ones that logically complete each sentence.

**a**happy / happily   **b**sure / surely

**c**Happily, the battery lasted long enough to make one more phone call.

- 1 **a**regret / \_\_\_\_\_   **b**thankful / \_\_\_\_\_  
Paul has just texted me that, **c**\_\_\_\_\_, he won't be able to join us because of the train strike.
- 2 **a**evident / \_\_\_\_\_   **b**definite / \_\_\_\_\_  
There was nobody there when we arrived. **c**\_\_\_\_\_, we must have got the times mixed up.
- 3 **a**crucial / \_\_\_\_\_   **b**undoubted / \_\_\_\_\_  
These electronic devices may affect our brains and, more **c**\_\_\_\_\_, the brains of our children.
- 4 **a**doubt / \_\_\_\_\_   **b**wrong / \_\_\_\_\_  
The number of adolescents addicted to smartphones will **c**\_\_\_\_\_ rise in the foreseeable future.
- 5 **a**serious / \_\_\_\_\_   **b**presume / \_\_\_\_\_  
Martha's tablet and mp3 player are still here. **c**\_\_\_\_\_ she's going to come back and get this stuff.
- 6 **a**understand / \_\_\_\_\_   **b**truthful / \_\_\_\_\_  
I admit I stood her up, so she was **c**\_\_\_\_\_ upset.

## 4 Choose appropriate modifiers. Then decide if the chosen modifiers indicate attitude (A), soften a message (S) or give emphasis (E).

### TWEET LITERATURE

Some wring their hands saying that, <sup>1</sup>*arguably* / *regrettably* ☐, classical literature is losing popularity among young people. <sup>2</sup>*Indeed* / *Incidentally* ☐, a new survey shows that a shocking 10 percent of young adults (those aged eighteen to twenty-five) have never read a book in their life (<sup>3</sup>*strikingly* / *clearly* ☐, however, 75 percent of them, on average, check their mobile device fourteen times a day). <sup>4</sup>*Curiously* / *Arguably* ☐ it is because they prefer other forms of experiencing reading, namely social media. Not only do young adults read all kinds of text available online but, <sup>5</sup>*interestingly* / *luckily* ☐, more and more of them have a go at creating short stories themselves. Take tweet literature, for example. This latest social networking trend consists of creating narratives in 140 characters. Each story must have believable heroes and a compelling plot. It is <sup>6</sup>*possibly* / *plainly* ☐ taking Twitter by storm because hashtags like #VeryShortStory are gaining a few thousand new fans every week. Instead of following celebrities' tweets about what they have for breakfast, those budding writers take to their smartphones to create succinct narratives. If you think it's impossible to tell a meaningful story in 140 characters, just visit Twitter, type in *veryshortstory* and see for yourself.

### SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

## 5 Choose the correct answer A–D.

- 1 Most students continue to check text messages while in class. \_\_, they find it hard to comply with the rules.  
A Incidentally                      B Plainly  
C Interestingly                      D Potentially
- 2 My sat-nav has never let me down. \_\_, it has helped me out in dire straits.  
A Indeed                                B Arguably  
C By the way                          D Hopefully
- 3 With all that talk about the harmful effects of electronic devices on children, \_\_, 40 percent of toddlers are reported to have played with their parents' phones.  
A apparently                          B surprisingly  
C in truth                                D generally speaking
- 4 Oscar had an accident while texting behind the wheel. \_\_, he wasn't seriously injured and will be able to take part in the match – hurrah!  
A Obviously                          B Understandably  
C Annoyingly                          D Happily
- 5 I need to say something. \_\_, I'm rather upset to hear you've been telling people I'm addicted to Facebook. It's just not true.  
A Curiously                            B Presumably  
C Frankly                                D Potentially
- 6 My retired neighbour's just won a big cash prize in a gaming competition. He is \_\_ living proof that video games are not only for the young.  
A to some extent                      B in a way  
C without doubt                        D sort of

/6



4.5

LISTENING LANGUAGE PRACTICE

Cloze • expressions with *get* • verbs

1 Complete the conversation with an appropriate word in each gap.

Extract from Student's Book recording 2.6

- M1: So, the other day I got my new bank card through the mail and it's one of those contactless ones – you just place it on the handset; you don't have to input your pin number or anything. The only thing *is* the maximum transaction is twenty pounds, <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ is a bit of a hassle.
- W1: Well, for little stuff, <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ if you're in a rush and just grabbing a coffee or whatever, it's great, and people want <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ nowadays. But what happens if somebody nicks your card? That'd bother me.
- M1: It's bizarre how things have changed over <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_. Like, you know, you used to swipe your card and then sign <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ pay for something, and then we had chip and pin, and <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ we've got to the point where we just tap our cards. It feels like I <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ have time to get used to one technology before the next one is introduced. [...] We're certainly living in a world <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ we want everything instantly. It's like those travel cards that you can top <sup>9</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ on the go. That's what these cards are about – being quick and convenient.
- W1: But that means compromising sometimes – and that's not always a good trade-off.



REMEMBER THIS

We use common verbs like **get**, **keep** (see 6.5) or **come** (see 9.5) in many informal expressions, e.g. [...] **we've got to the point** where we just tap our cards.

2 Look at sentences 1–8, which all contain expressions with *get*. Read the sentences and match the *get* expressions to definitions a–h.

to reach a specific stage in the development of something

- a not to make progress or improvement with a task ☐
- b to express the same as 'don't misunderstand me' ☐
- c to introduce something which you find annoying ☐
- d to say you are confused or do not know or understand something ☐
- e to organise or control yourself/something ☐
- f to progress or move forward from a current situation ☐
- g not to be able to escape from a situation ☐
- h to make an effort to deal with something difficult ☐

- 1 Arthur said that **what really gets him** is the fact that it's impossible to have a conversation with anyone anymore without being interrupted by some kind of gadget going off. And he's right, it is incredibly frustrating.
- 2 Using this instruction manual **isn't getting me anywhere**. I reckon I'd be better off making it up as I go along for all the use it's been!
- 3 Brody's been a mess since his fiancée dumped him. I tried telling him to **get on with his life** and that it's time he moved on but he didn't want to listen.
- 4 What's the capital of Latvia? You've **got me there!** Oh, hang on, is it Riga? Or is it Tallinn? No, no it's Riga. I think my brother-in-law went there for a convention once. Tallinn is in Estonia.
- 5 Listen – **don't get me wrong**. I'm not saying *all* modern technology is bad – it's just that we've become too reliant upon it, that's all.
- 6 Emma said she was having a nightmare trying to **get to grips with** Javascript. No matter how hard she tries, she can't seem to make it do what she wants it to.
- 7 Everybody has to do a presentation in front of the whole class. There's **no getting away from it** so you'd better start putting something together.
- 8 Ethan's presentation was a disaster. First there were problems with the projector and then the sound went. He tried to **get it together** but was so fazed he forgot most of its content.
- 9 We've finally **got to the point** in development where we need to start looking for serious investors.

WORD STORE 4F | Verbs

3 Complete the sentences with the correct words. The first letters are given.

What with PayPass technology, soon we'll no longer need to **swipe** cards to make electronic payments.

- 1 I really wanted a phone with 4G technology and dual sim capability – but on my budget I had to **c** \_\_\_\_\_ and choose one over the other.
- 2 Don't leave your tablet lying around – somebody'll be bound to **n** \_\_\_\_\_ it if you leave it unguarded.
- 3 E-magazines will never be able to replace the convenience of being able to quickly **f** \_\_\_\_\_ through a paper copy in search of an eye-catching headline.
- 4 I can't read anything on this smartphone when I'm outdoors and the sun is **g** \_\_\_\_\_ straight on its screen.
- 5 Breaking up with someone via SMS really **c** \_\_\_\_\_ relationships, don't you think? Will we value any human contact in the future?
- 6 Tina's new coffee machine makes an amazing latte. Now she can sit and really **s** \_\_\_\_\_ her idle Sunday morning coffee and newspaper.
- 7 My new Bluetooth® speakers really **e** \_\_\_\_\_ the sound of MP3. I highly recommend them.



4.6

SPEAKING

Agreeing and disagreeing

1 Put the words in order to make phrases and then mark each as *E* (agreeing enthusiastically), *P* (agreeing in part) or *D* (disagreeing politely).

- agree ... / I / but ... *I agree ..., but ...* P
- 1 right / course / you're / of / but ...
- 2 with / have / afraid / to / on / disagree / you / that / I'm / I
- 3 point / got / a / though ... / you've
- 4 I / sorry / agree / don't / really / you / there / I'm / with
- 5 got / with / to / you / I've / agree
- 6 not / there / definitely / wrong / you're

REMEMBER THIS

English people tend to be very indirect in their interactions, especially when disagreeing. While your language and culture may be more direct, it is a good idea to soften what you say when speaking to an English person.

~~I don't agree!~~ vs I'm not sure I fully agree with you.  
~~That's wrong!~~ vs I don't think that's quite right.

2 Correct the mistakes.

- Leanne: It scares me when people drive and text at the same time.

David: Absolutely! I'm totally ~~on you with~~ that.  
*with you on that.*
- 1 

Fi: Even if the story is not true, the damage has already been done.

Polly: You're got that right.
- 2 

Gustav: You really should switch off the lights when you leave a room.

Melanie: I know that's truthful, but I always forget.
- 3 

Harry: There's nothing but rubbish on the box again tonight.

Diane: I'm agree, but what else are we going to do, talk to each other?
- 4 

Jude: Dogs should live outside. They don't belong in the house.

Grace: Sorry, but I don't think that's just right.

3 Complete the conversation. The first letters are given.



Back in 1995 ...

- Stuart: Have you heard about this new Internet thing?
- Olive: Yes, I read about that actually. Sounds like science fiction to me. It'll never catch on.
- Stuart: I'm *sorry*, I *really don't agree with* you *here*. I read that it is going to change the world.
- Olive: Well, so did I, but <sup>1</sup>*s*\_\_\_\_, I <sup>j</sup>\_\_\_\_ <sup>d</sup>\_\_\_\_ <sup>t</sup>\_\_\_\_ that's <sup>r</sup>\_\_\_\_. Apparently, it's just a sea of totally unorganised information and it's impossible to find anything.
- Stuart: <sup>2</sup>I <sup>g</sup>\_\_\_\_ you're <sup>r</sup>\_\_\_\_, <sup>t</sup>\_\_\_\_ if someone can find a way to search through all that data quickly, then the potential is incredible. They say we'll be able to listen to music and watch television using it, and also shop and order tickets, book restaurants. All sorts, basically.
- Olive: <sup>3</sup>Hmm, I'm <sup>a</sup>\_\_\_\_ I'm <sup>n</sup>\_\_\_\_ so <sup>s</sup>\_\_\_\_. I've got music on my stereo, a television in the corner and shops just down the road. If I want to book tickets or reserve a table, then all I need to do is pick up the phone. Why would I want the Internet if I can already do all these things?
- Stuart: <sup>4</sup>*Y*\_\_\_\_ *r*\_\_\_\_ of *c*\_\_\_\_, *b*\_\_\_\_ I still think it would be cool to, for example, press a button and book a train ticket.
- Olive: Wouldn't you rather interact with a human being? Plus how would you pay and where would you get the actual ticket from?
- Stuart: <sup>5</sup>Well, you've <sup>g</sup>\_\_\_\_ a <sup>p</sup>\_\_\_\_. I'm not really sure how it would work. Anyway, I think it would be cool to like, be able to send messages to someone on the other side of the world.
- Olive: <sup>6</sup>I'm <sup>a</sup>\_\_\_\_ I <sup>h</sup>\_\_\_\_ to <sup>d</sup>\_\_\_\_ <sup>w</sup>\_\_\_\_ you on <sup>t</sup>\_\_\_\_. How many people do you know on the other side of the world?
- Stuart: Er, well ... none actually. I mean, I can see there are limitations, of course.
- Olive: <sup>7</sup>*Y*\_\_\_\_ can <sup>s</sup>\_\_\_\_ that <sup>a</sup>\_\_\_\_!



## WRITING

4.7

A review of a product

- 1 Complete the advice with the words from the box. There are two extra words.

benefits buyers comparison drawbacks  
list need options purpose service

The **purpose** of a review of a product is to <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ and comment on the product's features, so potential <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ can decide if it is right for them. The introduction <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ should arouse the reader's interest in the product and comment on the <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ or problem it offers a solution to. The main body paragraphs should say what the product does and what features it offers, as well as drawing a <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ with other similar products, if appropriate. Any <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ or areas for improvement should also be mentioned at this point. Finally, in the conclusion, the <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ of the product should be summarised.

- 2 Complete the extracts from product reviews. Some letters are given.



Interested in star-gazing? Want to see more but don't have room for a large telescope?

The bread maker <sup>1</sup>en\_\_\_\_\_ you to bake perfect loaves with very little effort.

The external drive <sup>2</sup>of\_\_\_\_\_ excellent features such as one-touch backup.

This <sup>3</sup>op\_\_\_\_\_ is particularly useful for anyone who is short of time.

It's the speed at which the data is processed that really <sup>4</sup>st\_\_\_\_\_ out.

The clear, concise menu makes all the <sup>5</sup>di\_\_\_\_\_ when it comes to interacting with the device.

The MX5s are some of the most popular desktop computer speakers <sup>6</sup>av\_\_\_\_\_ in the UK.

The only real <sup>7</sup>do\_\_\_\_\_ to the phone is the disappointingly short battery life.

It would be a real <sup>8</sup>pl\_\_\_\_\_ if updates were automatic rather than manual.

- 3 Read the review. Which type of consumer are drones primarily aimed at?

- 1 Estate agents  
2 Home delivery companies  
3 Professional photographers

- 4 Choose the correct words to complete the review.

## THE STAYING-POWER OF DRONES

When drones were first produced in the 1940s, they were strictly <sup>1</sup>designed / enabled for military use, and this remained the case for several decades. Then it became obvious that everyone could find a use for a drone, <sup>2</sup>not / if only for practical pursuits, but also to experience the thrill of controlling an object as it flies through the sky.

One of the most prevalent uses for camera-equipped drones is selling houses. Employing a high-quality drone has become the first <sup>3</sup>choice / option for estate agents so that they can create **first-rate** advertising. A remote-control drone <sup>4</sup>allows / offers you to shoot **jaw-dropping** footage, and the <sup>5</sup>ease of use / user-friendly of the latest models means that **astute** estate agents can do the job themselves, creating **mind-blowing** photos so as to highlight a home's location and other advantages.

<sup>6</sup>Even / While drones are popular amongst estate agents, they have become the **ultimate** necessity in agriculture, forest management and environmental sciences. These specialised drones <sup>7</sup>benefit / boast features such as monitors to measure soil quality, moisture levels and pest damage, and they offer <sup>8</sup>outstanding / expert advantages for those who watch over large areas of land. In fact, for keeping the land healthy and productive, the latest specialised drones are **peerless**.

<sup>9</sup>Some / Others might think that using drones for delivering packages to homes would provide a **spectacular** advantage for both customers and the environment, but while it's a **nifty** idea, it has yet to become a reality. Operating a drone above the ground is one thing, but allowing it to land in someone's front garden can be risky, <sup>10</sup>whether / if to playing children or passing drivers. However cool it would be to have your purchases dropped on your doorstep, that feature may have to wait a while so as not to endanger property or innocent bystanders!

- 5 Match the adjectives in bold from the review to their synonyms. Some words may be chosen more than once.

- 1 impressive – **jaw-dropping** / \_\_\_\_\_ /  
2 unbeatable – \_\_\_\_\_ / \_\_\_\_\_  
3 skilful/agile – \_\_\_\_\_ / \_\_\_\_\_  
4 perfect – \_\_\_\_\_ / \_\_\_\_\_  
5 intelligent – \_\_\_\_\_ / \_\_\_\_\_  
6 top quality – \_\_\_\_\_ / \_\_\_\_\_

- 6 Choose the correct adjectives to complete the sentences.

- 1 The site is gorgeous; some of the most **astute** / **ultimate** minds in web design are clearly at work here.  
2 The depth of information on DJs and producers is truly **nifty** / **spectacular** and enough to keep even the most ardent fans entertained.  
3 This really is the **ultimate** / **first-rate** page for lovers of all things science fiction.  
4 Rising way above the competition, this cookery website is **mind-blowing** / **peerless** in its category.  
5 Offering plenty of **spectacular** / **nifty** little suggestions, tips and tricks, this site will really help you improve your language skills.

- 7 Underline the following structures which express purpose in the review.

- Two beginning with to + infinitive + noun phrase
- One beginning with so that
- Two beginning with so as (not) to
- Four beginning with for

- 8 Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first. Do not change the words in capitals.

- The red button is there to allow you to instantly wipe all data if your privacy is violated. **SO**  
The red button is there so you can instantly wipe all data if your privacy is violated.
- 1 It is advisable to limit your workouts to ninety minutes per day to avoid overexerting yourself. **AS NOT**  
It is advisable to limit your workouts to ninety minutes per day \_\_\_\_\_ yourself.
- 2 The tablet goes to sleep after ten inactive minutes to save battery life. **ORDER**  
The tablet goes to sleep after ten inactive minutes \_\_\_\_\_ battery life.
- 3 Novice gamers will find this model ideal but it has limited functionality for those who are more experienced. **FOR**  
\_\_\_\_\_, but has limited functionality for those who are more experienced.
- 4 Always return your knife safely to its sheath in order to minimise the risk of injury. **AS**  
Always return your knife safely to its sheath \_\_\_\_\_ the risk of injury.
- 5 Keep a spare ink cartridge in stock so you don't run out in the middle of an important job. **TO AVOID**  
Keep a spare ink cartridge in stock \_\_\_\_\_ in the middle of an important job.

## SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

- 9 Read the writing task. Then follow the instructions below.

## Reviews Wanted: Most popular websites

You have been asked to write a review for your school's online magazine, in which you evaluate your favourite website. Describe what it is about, who it is for and what the benefits are.

Before you start, follow steps 1–2 below.

- 1 Brainstorm ideas:
- What kind of website is it? What content is available/service does it provide?
  - Who is it aimed at?
  - Is it easy to navigate?
  - What are its key features? Does it offer anything unique?
  - Why do you like it so much?
  - Are there any similar websites to which you could compare it?
  - Are there any drawbacks or areas in which it could be improved?
- 2 Make a plan for your review then complete the writing task.

## SHOW THAT YOU'VE CHECKED

Finished? Always check your writing (especially in the exam!) Can you tick ✓ everything on this list?

## In my review of a product:

- in the introduction, I have aroused the reader's interest in the product. ☐
- I have said what need or problem the product offers a solution to. ☐
- in the main body, I have ... ☐
- specified what the product does and what it offers. ☐
- explained any special benefits or features and used positive adjectives to describe them. ☐
- used listing phrases to connect the information. ☐
- included a comparison with other similar products if appropriate. ☐
- mentioned any drawbacks or areas for improvement. ☐
- in the conclusion, I have summarised the benefits of the product. ☐
- I have used a reasonably formal and impersonal style. ☐
- I have checked my spelling. ☐
- I have checked my handwriting is neat enough for someone else to read. ☐



## 4.8 SELF-CHECK

## VOCABULARY

- 1 Match words from boxes A and B to form expressions and compounds. Sometimes you need to use a hyphen (-). Then complete the sentences with the expressions and compounds.

A { back commercial draw  
ever flick purpose }

B { better built flop lash  
the line through }

You can make as much noise as you want, but I draw the line at playing loud music during the rehearsal.

- Our school will be the first in the region to have a \_\_\_\_\_ language laboratory.
- With so much advancement in equipment, sports photographers come up with \_\_\_\_\_ action shots.
- After the manager's proposal to work at the weekend, there was a \_\_\_\_\_ against the idea.
- Although the band spent months recording their new album, it turned out to be a \_\_\_\_\_.
- Before I decide whether to buy a fashion magazine or not, I first \_\_\_\_\_ it to see what the contents are like.

/5

- 2 Choose the correct answer.

The quality of Amy's work started to decline / *enhance* / *compromise* so she stopped doing the campaign.

- Having starred in a few minor plays, George came into *prominence* / *resurgence* / *ascendancy* when he got the role of Hamlet.
- The singer could hardly see the audience because the spotlights *drew* / *swiped* / *glared* straight into her eyes.
- The first artificial language, Esperanto, was the *brainchild* / *counterpart* / *prowess* of Ludwik Zamenhof.
- Interviewees should realise that their success in the application process rides *at* / *in* / *on* both their communication skills and being prepared for the interview.
- Changing the boss of a company doesn't always *enrich* / *fuel* / *savour* improvements in the way it operates.

/5

- 3 Complete the sentences with the correct forms of the words in brackets.

What struck us most about Pino was his diligence (diligent) in creating the school's webpage.

- Lowering the prices of smartphones suddenly increased their \_\_\_\_\_ (popular).
- Unfortunately, the athlete's misconduct \_\_\_\_\_ (cheap) his contract with an advertising company.
- It's hard to put up with his \_\_\_\_\_ (careless) when it comes to installing new software on his laptop.
- I'm sure we'll solve the problem of overbooking the concert as a result of our \_\_\_\_\_ (genius).
- Our aim is to raise young people's \_\_\_\_\_ (aware) of the health risks connected with playing video games for too long.

/5

## GRAMMAR

- 4 Complete the sentences with the correct forms of the verbs in brackets. Use at least two words in each gap.

A group of scientists were unable to identify (identify) the problems with the equipment used in space.

- Maria begged \_\_\_\_\_ (we/help) her with the research enabling her to write her dissertation.
- The workers seem \_\_\_\_\_ (not/do) the demolition work according to the timetable agreed.
- \_\_\_\_\_ (find) a cure for cancer is not easy even for the most advanced teams of researchers.
- Students were made \_\_\_\_\_ (vacate) the lab while he did some experiments with explosive materials.
- You are \_\_\_\_\_ (not/conduct) another survey for a year; all your colleagues have already voted the mobile phone as their favourite invention.

/5

- 5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in the box. Add any other words necessary. The number of words needed is in brackets.

{ confirm finish open play save send }

Victoria was the first to finish a report about neurosurgery. (2)

- Your children were seen \_\_\_\_\_ with the remote controls in the garden. (3)
- My parents bought a more economical washing machine so \_\_\_\_\_ money on bills. (3)
- The PM \_\_\_\_\_ the Science Centre tomorrow. (3)
- \_\_\_\_\_ your booking you should contact us at least a fortnight in advance. (2)
- Our IT specialist was surprised not \_\_\_\_\_ any data on the virus. (4)

/5

- 6 Choose the correct expression.

## The rise of e-readers

Interestingly / *Annoyingly* / *To some extent*, the first e-readers were not created for ordinary people, but for specialists who wanted to share documents like technical manuals.

<sup>1</sup>Frankly / *Clearly* / *Fortunately*, these were not for general consumption, but once people realised that electronic books could appeal to a wider readership, more variations of e-readers were produced. <sup>2</sup>Unfortunately / *Likely* / *Anyway*, each one used a different format. They also differed in the kind of books they made available on their individual platforms. <sup>3</sup>Thankfully / *In fact* / *Potentially*, some focused on obscure publications, while others on new authors.

In time the commercial market grew, and e-readers can now be seen everywhere. <sup>4</sup>Strikingly / *Without doubt* / *Personally*, they provide a complete mobile library for avid readers, and their backlit screens mean they can be read anywhere, anytime.

<sup>5</sup>Apparently / *Of course* / *Incidentally*, sales of paperback books have actually increased despite the popularity of e-readers.

/5

Total /30

## USE OF ENGLISH

- 7 Choose the correct answer A, B, C or D.



## The impact of music

Does music have the same emotional impact as it did in the past? Has technology A a role not only in the way music is composed and recorded but also in its power?

<sup>1</sup>\_\_\_\_, current technology allows anyone to stream niche videos and download audio clips, which has created a far wider <sup>2</sup>\_\_\_\_ base for a greater variety of music than the more traditional <sup>3</sup>\_\_\_\_ forums of the past. Has this <sup>4</sup>\_\_\_\_ the arrival of a new musical age, though?

As a <sup>5</sup>\_\_\_\_ of fact, it has been suggested that technology has had a negative impact on music. This is because it could make composers reluctant to experiment, relying instead on what has always been popular. This might appear to create a uniformity of sound, which some feel has led to a <sup>6</sup>\_\_\_\_ in musicality.

This opinion is not universally held, <sup>7</sup>\_\_\_\_ there are comments which have been <sup>8</sup>\_\_\_\_ on music websites suggesting that technology has contributed towards reducing music's emotional impact.

A played  
C done

1 A Plainly  
C Potentially

2 A enthusiast  
C follower

3 A typical  
C normal

4 A set  
C heralded

5 A limit  
C indication

6 A downturn  
C standard

7 A conversely  
C potentially

8 A delivered  
C informed

B made  
D given

B Likely  
D Consequently

B admirer  
D fan

B average  
D mainstream

B drawn  
D pushed

B matter  
D proof

B backlash  
D prominence

B since  
D nevertheless

B posted  
D sent

/8

- 8 Complete the text with the correct forms of the words in brackets.

## Is technology good for the sport of motor racing?

The roar of the engines and speed of the cars generate tremendous excitement (excite), as spectators cheer on the top drivers.

Now, as ever more technological advances enhance performance, critics question the modern approach to racing. They say affluent teams have an advantage, as they can <sup>1</sup>\_\_\_\_ (capital) on their financial resources to develop cars that allow them to remain in the <sup>2</sup>\_\_\_\_ (ascend), while others fall by the wayside. <sup>3</sup>\_\_\_\_ (presume), such critics also feel the complexity of the machinery has replaced simple driving skills, thus depriving the sport of its basic <sup>4</sup>\_\_\_\_ (authentic).

However, advances in car design bring benefits beyond the racetrack – mechanical <sup>5</sup>\_\_\_\_ (break) in racing car design filter down to the mass market. For example, rearview mirrors date back to the 1900s, when racing drivers realised their <sup>6</sup>\_\_\_\_ (effect) for revealing competitors behind them.

Clearly, although the sport remains popular with fans, it's technology that guarantees its continuing commercial success.

/6

- 9 Complete the text with one word in each gap.

Being a games designer is the best job – ever! I must admit that in a <sup>1</sup>\_\_\_\_ I expected the job to be rather dull and repetitive – at least to a certain extent. When I first saw the designers on my work experience programme, everyone appeared to <sup>2</sup>\_\_\_\_ constantly fazed and bleary-eyed from staring at the computer monitor too long. But now I hold their commitment in very <sup>3</sup>\_\_\_\_ esteem – in fact, it's a sheer <sup>4</sup>\_\_\_\_ to see them so focused on their work. Being a designer allows you to <sup>5</sup>\_\_\_\_ the limits of current technology and even help bring about the next generation of hardware. In order <sup>6</sup>\_\_\_\_ to go crazy though, you really do need to step away from the screen at regular intervals.

/6

Total /20



# 5 All in a day's work

## 5.1

## VOCABULARY

Employment and career • phrasal verbs  
• colloquial phrases • collocations to describe work and money

### SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

- 1 Complete the text with the correct forms of the words from the box.

apply compete employ interview  
manage promote recruit train

Graduates! Finding it hard to impress *interviewers* and stand out from other <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_. At Freshlegs we're here to help you beat the <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ and find the office job of your dreams. We are a <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ agency specialising in matching graduates with reputable <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_. We focus on positions that offer on-the-job <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ and the prospect of <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ to senior or <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ positions.

To find out more, visit our website freshlegs.com.

### WORD STORE 5A | Phrasal verbs – work

- 2 Combine words from boxes A and B to make phrasal verbs. Then complete the dialogues with the correct forms of the phrasal verbs.

A break make order press  
slave snow stand take

A around away into on (x2)  
under up (x2)

#### Conversation 1: Ali and Carol

A: How was your day?

C: Terrible. I was *ordered around* all day long by my supervisor. I don't mind being told what to do, but she's so rude!

A: Oh Carol, you need to <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ for yourself a bit more! Say something if she's being rude unnecessarily.

C: Well, that's easily said, Ali, but I don't want to make things worse.

A: I know it's difficult. I'll tell you what, why don't we go out for dinner to <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ for your bad day. Take your mind off it, you know?

#### Conversation 2: Fiona and George

F: What do you want to do after university?

G: Actually, I'm hoping to <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ acting.

F: Acting? Cool. Are you taking classes?

G: Fiona, acting isn't something you learn. You've either got that special something or you haven't. Actors are <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ on the strength of a good audition, not because of some course they did.

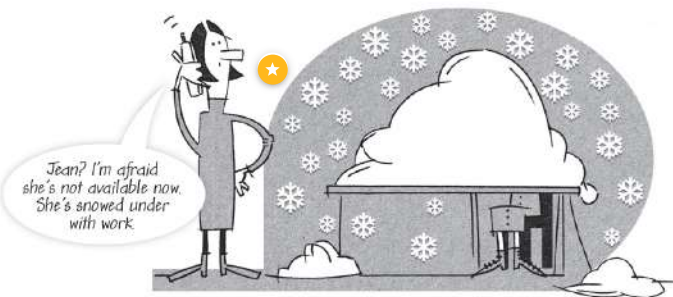
F: And exactly how do you think actors get good enough to succeed in auditions, George?

#### Conversation 3: Jean and Geoff

J: I'm constantly being <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ with more work than one person can reasonably be expected to do. I do my best to keep at it, you know, <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_, but the pile in the in-tray never seems to get any smaller.

G: You know what they say: 'work to live, not live to work'.

J: Well 'they' can shut up, whoever 'they' are! What am I supposed to do, tell the boss 'OK, I've had enough for today and I'm going home to live my life', while everyone else is still <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_?



### WORD STORE 5B | Colloquial phrases

- 3 Match the sentence beginnings and endings.

Some graduates are willing to work for nothing to get

- 1 Philip dressed far too casually for the interview and so scuppered
- 2 You can't quit until you find something else, so you'll just have to put on
- 3 A first class honours degree can really jump
- 4 If I hadn't had the
- 5 The chef asked me to keep
- 6 Although it may be unfair, knowing the right people can help you to get
- 7 I understand from your supervisor that you've hit

- A his chances before he'd even begun.
- B guts to change courses after my first year, I might not have got a qualification at all.
- C the ground running and surprised everyone in your first month here.
- D tabs on the new cook at work and make sure he wasn't messing up the preparation.
- E -start your career, especially if it's from a prestigious university.
- F a brave face and start looking elsewhere.
- G your foot in the door in this business.
- H on the first rung of the ladder.

### WORD STORE 5C | Collocations – work

- 4 Choose the correct option to complete the sentences.

- 1 If you ask me, *unpaid* / *plum* internships exploit the young and the inexperienced.
- 2 Make sure the company covers *your experience* / *expenses* or you won't earn anything from the trip.
- 3 Every manager should occasionally do *menial* / *minimum* tasks so they don't forget what their subordinates go through on a daily basis.
- 4 As a freelancer, I don't have a *placement* / *permanent* contract, so I have less job security.
- 5 With his technical know-how, Peter has made himself *indispensable* / *hands-on* around the office.
- 6 If you want to be a teacher, working as a classroom assistant is a good way to gain *overtime* / *experience*.

- 5 Complete the notices. The first letters are given.

Those who have *worked overtime* this month please submit your time sheets with details of the extra hours by the 31st at 12:00.

Aged between sixteen and eighteen and looking for <sup>1</sup>h \_\_\_\_\_ <sup>2</sup>e \_\_\_\_\_ in the building trade? Contact us now about <sup>3</sup>s \_\_\_\_\_-t \_\_\_\_\_ p \_\_\_\_\_ (two to four weeks) on building sites in the local area.

Sign this petition and support our campaign to increase the <sup>4</sup>m \_\_\_\_\_ w \_\_\_\_\_ by 10 percent for all workers.

You'll never <sup>5</sup>l \_\_\_\_\_ a p \_\_\_\_\_ j \_\_\_\_\_ if your CV is not up to scratch! Click here to find out how we can help you secure the perfect position.

We are now recruiting graduates for <sup>6</sup>e \_\_\_\_\_-l \_\_\_\_\_ j \_\_\_\_\_. Start at the beginning and quickly work your way up through our promotional structure.

### WORD STORE 5D | EXTRA Collocations

- 6 Complete the text with the missing words. Use the information in brackets to help you. The first letters are given.

whatsnextgraduate.com Home | Search | Contact

#### Talk to anyone? Full of energy? Why not be a holiday rep?

Among all the short-term jobs available for graduates, being a holiday rep is probably one of the most fun. Of course, it's unlikely to turn into a career and you probably won't *get a pension* (receive money from employers or the government after you have retired), but you are also not going to have to *work for n* \_\_\_\_\_ (receive no pay) and reps *get p* \_\_\_\_\_ (receive non-financial bonuses) that are the envy of many a holidaying office worker.

With free accommodation and transport plus cheap food and drinks, it's easy enough to *make e* \_\_\_\_\_ *meet* (earn enough money to survive). Most reps receive a small basic salary then *work on c* \_\_\_\_\_ (receive payment according to how much you sell) to top this up. If you sell enough trips and tickets to *make your t* \_\_\_\_\_ (sell as much as you have been asked to) or even better go beyond it, it is possible, in relative terms, to *make a m* \_\_\_\_\_ (earn a large amount of money). Just one piece of advice. This is a twenty-four-hour job with no early nights or lazy mornings.

- 7 Choose the collocation which is not possible or not likely in each group.

- 1 make a profit / loss / rise
- 2 get a pension / for nothing / a rise
- 3 work for perks / a pittance / peanuts
- 4 make a mint / commission / your target
- 5 get ends meet / a financial incentive / perks

### SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

- 8 Complete each pair of sentences with the same answer A–C.

- 1 a I was so sick of being \_\_\_\_\_ under with paperwork that decided to quit and retrain.  
b It hasn't \_\_\_\_\_ so much since the winter of 1987, when there were drifts of three metres in places.  
A pulled B snowed C rained
- 2 a Today's home-baked treat is a delicious seasonal \_\_\_\_\_ and apple crumble.  
b Kit landed a \_\_\_\_\_ job with the BBC and is now filming in the Caribbean.  
A mint B top C plum
- 3 a Allergy advice: This product may contain traces of \_\_\_\_\_ or almonds.  
b You know what they say: if you pay \_\_\_\_\_, you get monkeys.  
A peanuts B pittances C slave
- 4 a I've \_\_\_\_\_ everyone who was at the party except Kelly, whose phone is broken.  
b It's almost impossible to get on the first \_\_\_\_\_ of the ladder without a recognised qualification.  
A rung B step C seen
- 5 a Are you keeping \_\_\_\_\_ on me? You've been watching me all morning.  
b Warning: You need to close old \_\_\_\_\_ in your browser before you can open new ones.  
A notes B tabs C eyes

- 9 Choose the correct answer A–C.

- 1 We really need to \_\_\_\_\_ on if we are going to have all these orders ready before the holiday rush.  
A work B put C press
- 2 Knowing the theory is all well and good but we are looking for someone with hands-on \_\_\_\_\_.  
A experience B commission C expenses
- 3 We recommend an unpaid \_\_\_\_\_ as a way to gain experience.  
A wage B contract C internship
- 4 If the company makes a \_\_\_\_\_ again next month, we'll be looking at possible bankruptcy.  
A profit B loss C target
- 5 To be honest, without a decent financial \_\_\_\_\_ I can't see any reason to take on a heavier workload.  
A incentive B rise C pension

/10



## READING

5.2

The rebirth of apprenticeships  
• phrases • collocations

## The Rebirth of Apprenticeships

Apprenticeships are currently experiencing a renaissance as a hands-on alternative to academic study at a higher education institution. Today, we offer the views of four young people currently enrolled in various apprenticeship programmes in the UK.

### A J. Reynard, 18

I'm in my first year of a three-year HR apprenticeship at a well-known British bank and, although it was a shock to be thrown in at the deep end, as I was expected to be on a par with\* everyone else, I really feel I made the right decision in taking it on. From day one I was plunged into the HR team and expected to contribute to the real workings of the bank. Through a series of placements in the HR department, I've completed projects in all sorts of things from *change and growth* to *personal development and reward*. Alongside this I'm studying for an industry-recognised, degree-level HR qualification, so by the time I've finished, I'll have the experience and the all-important piece of paper. The academic assignments are all about utilising your day-to-day experience, making observations and linking in the theory, and for me it has proven to be a very efficient way to learn.

Based on my experiences here, I'd say apprenticeships are great for team-players who have a strong drive to learn and are willing to apply themselves to whatever challenges are thrown their way.

### B A. Rawlins, 19

When I was a younger teenager, I was in a fairly bad place personally and emotionally. As a result of some less than positive experiences in my personal life, I missed my chance to go to university, and with everything that went on, the last thing I'd thought about was what I actually wanted to do as a career. So, I decided to take things into my own hands and sign up for some training with a view to finding a job. I didn't have high hopes of being accepted on an apprenticeship to be honest, but lo and behold\*, here I am two years in and absolutely thriving, I'd say. Working at such a prestigious car company gives me a real sense of pride and people are always intrigued when I say who I work for. There is no denying it's a male-dominated environment, and at first I felt like I had more to prove than the guys who started at the same time as me. However, I showed myself to be capable and competent and quickly earned everyone's respect. If I'm honest, having a sharp tongue helps! I stuck up for myself when I had to and people know not to mess with me now. I think apprenticeships are sometimes overlooked by school leavers, but in my case being an apprentice has provided me with some real direction in life and the added bonus of relative financial stability.

### C A. Mendel, 19

My folks are not well off so the only way I could've made it through university would have been to take loans to cover tuition and living. The thought of graduating with tens of thousands of pounds of debt was enough to put me off before I'd even begun. The careers counsellor at my school suggested I try an apprenticeship instead. Frankly speaking, I'd always regarded apprenticeships as being a bit of a lazy option for those who didn't do so well at school, so I was amazed to discover what a wide range of options there actually are out there now. I'm working with my hands, which I love, I've got a stable income, and I'm planning to start my own plumbing business one day. And laziness is strictly out of bounds\*, let me tell you\*! If something goes wrong, you realise it could be your fault and you have to take responsibility. It's hard work and long hours. I don't remember the last time I went out during the week – I'm too busy and tired.

### D Anonymous, 18

I guess most people wouldn't believe me if I told them I was an apprentice spy, but, as I am sworn to anonymity, that's really only a moot point\* anyway. The apprenticeship scheme, run by MI5, MI6 and GCHQ (Government Communications Headquarters), has its sights on tackling future threats to national security. There are eighty of us undergoing training in software engineering, telecommunications and mobile phone systems with a view to joining the global fight against cyber crime, terrorism, and espionage. On completion of the two years it takes, we'll have earned a foundation degree in communications, security and engineering, as well as a diploma in IT. Traditionally, security service positions are only open to university graduates, but, as was pointed out to us during the selection procedure, you can't learn what we're covering on any undergraduate course, because we are actually inside the security services, finding out about the systems needed to protect the country from harm. I think this is a prime example of the way apprenticeships are offering a real alternative to university these days, an alternative which equips anyone with industry specific skills and, crucially, doesn't leave them owing a small fortune.

## GLOSSARY

on a par with (phr) – as good as or equal to  
lo and behold (phr) – a humorous way to introduce surprising information  
out of bounds (phr) – forbidden

let me tell you! (phr) – used for emphasis  
a moot point (phr) – an issue that is debatable and open for discussion but of no practical significance

1 Read the article quickly and match each picture to a paragraph.



2 Read the article again. For questions 1–10, choose from sections A–D. The sections may be chosen more than once.

Which apprentice

- was surprised to be accepted into their apprenticeship programme? ★ ☐
- compares the usefulness of their apprenticeship with a university degree? ☐
- chose an apprenticeship for financial reasons? ☐
- admits that their apprenticeship has had an impact on their social life? ☐
- felt discriminated against initially in their apprenticeship? ☐
- praises the way study and work are combined in their apprenticeship? ☐
- demonstrated their self-confidence to colleagues? ☐
- was not expecting to take on an employee's responsibilities so early in the apprenticeship? ☐
- believes their apprenticeship scheme will have far-reaching benefits beyond the personal? ☐
- acknowledges their early misconceptions about apprenticeships? ☐

3 Complete the definitions with the words from the box. Use the text to help you.

( apply deep hands high small sharp )

If you are **thrown in at the deep** end, you are made to do something difficult without adequate preparation.

- If you **have** \_\_\_\_\_ **hopes**, you are very optimistic or hopeful that something will happen.
- If you **owe a** \_\_\_\_\_ **fortune**, you have a large amount of debt.
- If you \_\_\_\_\_ **yourself to something**, you give it all your focus and attention.
- If you **take something into your own** \_\_\_\_\_, you stop relying on someone else and take personal responsibility for it.
- If you **have a** \_\_\_\_\_ **tongue**, you speak harshly or critically but in a clever way.

WORD STORE 5E | Collocations

4 Complete the extract from an interview with the words from the box. There are three extra words.

( base business charity dream growth  
insight losses recognition talent )

DJ-DIGEST: How did XR records get started?

**Damien:** Well, I'd always dreamed of starting a record label, so after DJ-ing and producing music for several years, my business partner and I decided to follow our dream and found our <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_. Our first release did really well in the clubs, but we sustained financial <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ because of the expense of the start-up. However, the popularity of the record on dance floors helped XR records gain <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ among big name DJs and helped us build our customer <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_. We've just released our twentieth record and are now focusing on recruiting new <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ to the label.

5 Look at the vocabulary in lesson 5.2 in the Student's Book, then complete the adverts. The first letters are given.

Kickstarter helps you **g**\_\_\_\_\_ **c**\_\_\_\_\_ **o**\_\_\_\_\_ **p**\_\_\_\_\_ and raise capital for your start-up business.

Vocational training to help you **r**\_\_\_\_\_ your **p**\_\_\_\_\_. Be the best that you can. Now recruiting.

Get your career off to a **2** **f**\_\_\_\_\_ **s**\_\_\_\_\_ with our CV preparation services: cvservices@gmail.net

**3** **F**\_\_\_\_\_ in your **r**\_\_\_\_\_? Rich one minute, broke the next? Sharkey's loans can help your business cope.

Invest with Larkin and Sons financial brokers. Our investments consistently **4** **s**\_\_\_\_\_ a healthy **r**\_\_\_\_\_ within eight weeks.

Are you **5** **f**\_\_\_\_\_ **o**\_\_\_\_\_ of agricultural college and wondering what to do next? Sheffield council is now recruiting summer rangers for its parks and gardens.

If you **6** **h**\_\_\_\_\_ a great **r**\_\_\_\_\_ with children, why not volunteer to help at Blackmore Orphanage?



5.3

GRAMMAR

-ing forms

SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

1 Complete the sentences with the *-ing* form of the verbs from the box. There are two extra verbs.

be call check fascinate have  
intern take talk pretend

The two teams were already *having* a brainstorming session when several latecomers arrived.

- \_\_\_\_\_ young and single, Jake didn't say no to the relocation to a different city.
- By mid-spring, he'll have been \_\_\_\_\_ for us for a year.
- It's always worth \_\_\_\_\_ the details of any contract before you sign it.
- That man \_\_\_\_\_ to our head teacher is a famous entrepreneur and former student.
- Many employees admit to \_\_\_\_\_ to be busy when their boss is looking.
- It's \_\_\_\_\_ to imagine where Mark Zuckerberg might be working now if he hadn't dropped out of Harvard.

2 ★ Complete the text with one word in each gap.

THE WEIRDEST JOBS IN THE WORLD

Nancy Rica Schiff, an American photographer, is keen on *bringing* some of the world's oddest professions to people's attention. Would you ever consider <sup>1</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ such jobs as dog food tester, dinosaur duster or golf ball diver? No? Apparently some people out there have succeeded <sup>2</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ pursuing a career in these strange occupations. <sup>3</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ travelling around the USA for fifteen years, Nancy was tracking down professionals with unique jobs, from the person who dresses Barbie dolls for a living, a gumbuster whose job involves <sup>4</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ rid of chewing gum marks from the streets, to a knife-thrower's assistant, to mention just a few. Miss Schiff claims she will never grow tired <sup>5</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ spotting occupations with a twist of humour, her favourite <sup>6</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ that of a professional mermaid. So next time you fancy <sup>7</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ your job, you might want to refer to her art for inspiration.

3 ★ ★ Complete the sentences with the correct forms of the verbs in brackets.

*Having studied* (study) at the same school as the company owner, Dave hoped to get a better-paid job.

- \_\_\_\_\_ (not/have) any kind of formal training before, I seriously doubted they'd give me that job.
- \_\_\_\_\_ (dismiss) unfairly, my mum decided to go to court to fight for her rights.
- Don't tell anyone, but your brother was seen \_\_\_\_\_ (reprimand) by his boss in the restaurant today.
- Some students complained about \_\_\_\_\_ (not/send) any information regarding the scholarship.

4 ★ ★ Complete the sentences with the words in brackets. Do not change the form of the words. Use three words in each gap.

My tutor is concerned *about my working* at the weekends instead of learning. (working)

- The trainee waiter insisted \_\_\_\_\_ his weekly wages in advance. (given)
- My new employer insisted \_\_\_\_\_ her a reference from my previous boss. (giving)
- Phil's Maths teacher doesn't approve \_\_\_\_\_ a 'slave driver' behind his back. (called)
- Jenny's friends don't approve \_\_\_\_\_ them only when she needs something. (calling)

5 ★ ★ ★ Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first. Do not change the words in capitals. Use between three and six words in each gap.

It's pointless to bring this subject up again. **USE**  
*It is no use bringing* this subject up again.

- As soon as Bess was given a day off, she went on a shopping spree with her best friend. **ON**  
\_\_\_\_\_ a day off, Bess went on a shopping spree with her best friend.
- It doesn't make sense to ask him for a pay rise. **POINT**  
\_\_\_\_\_ him for a pay rise.
- Many entrepreneurs complain that they find it difficult to get enough qualified staff. **DIFFICULTY**  
Many entrepreneurs complain that they \_\_\_\_\_ enough qualified staff.
- As more and more people leave the country, soon we'll experience a serious shortage of staff. **WITH**  
\_\_\_\_\_ the country, soon we'll experience a serious shortage of staff.
- It is counterproductive to talk to her about promoting you now. **GOOD**  
\_\_\_\_\_ to her about promoting you now.

SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

6 Complete the sentences with the words in brackets in the correct forms. Do not change the word order. Use between four and six words in each gap.

After six months, my brother finally *succeeded in finding* *a job* (succeed/find/job) as a clerk.

- \_\_\_\_\_ (not/be able/find) a job for one year, he was entitled to unemployment benefit.
- His partner doesn't \_\_\_\_\_ (approve/he/accept) that new job in the capital.
- \_\_\_\_\_ (be/made redundant) so suddenly, Mark's parents hadn't prepared any contingency plan.
- \_\_\_\_\_ (on/tell/news), Fiona immediately called her parents for advice.
- Fifteen years in this profession and Arthur still \_\_\_\_\_ (have/difficult/get used) to night shifts.
- \_\_\_\_\_ (with/she/job/get) too stressful, Ella decided to take a year off and travel.



5.4

USE OF ENGLISH

Prepositional phrases

1 Complete the text with the missing prepositions.

The Young & The Rich

At times we find ourselves drawn to stories of people who become millionaires at a very early age and wish we could swap places with them. <sup>1</sup> in other words, we all want to be rich. Here are two young entrepreneurs who struck gold:

John Koon – net worth: \$80 million

<sup>2</sup> At first glance, John looks like an average guy. However, being resourceful <sup>3</sup> by nature, he had already made \$1 million by the age of sixteen. His auto parts business was famous <sup>4</sup> for co-operating with MTV, but he quickly became more interested in fashion, especially streetwear. The entrepreneur is currently <sup>5</sup> in charge of several clothing brands in New York City.

Ashley Qualls – net worth: \$8 million

Her passion for self-learning lies <sup>6</sup> at the heart of her success. When she was fourteen, Ashley decided to study HTML, which helped her design websites. Having launched Whateverlife.com, she attracted lots of enthusiasm <sup>7</sup> from her unique web page designs, and by 2007 had 7 million monthly page hits, which generated a huge income <sup>8</sup> from advertising. More recently, Ashley has been battling an autoimmune disease, and is active in projects supporting the chronically ill.



2 Replace the underlined words with the phrases from the box. There are two extra phrases.

- at sea   by chance   by virtue of   in the long run  
in the wrong   ~~to a certain degree~~   to my mind  
to no avail

- My parents agree with me to some extent on the subject of my moving out. to a certain degree
- 1 My cousin has sent about 100 applications over the past month, but all in vain as he hasn't received any response yet. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 New workers almost always feel at a loss and they need someone to show them the ropes and answer their questions. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 I put my success down to hard work, but my boss thinks it's just beginner's luck and he claims I found that investor by accident. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 Nepotism means getting the best jobs by means of your family connections. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 The disciplinary committee is investigating the case now and they will decide which one of us was at fault. \_\_\_\_\_

3 Complete the dialogue with one word in each gap. First letters are given.

- B: Dad, can I talk to you about something?  
D: By all means! What is it?  
B: There's this girl from Australia who gained popularity on the Internet by posting her photos wearing the latest fashion.  
D: And? What about her?  
B: Yesterday she surprised her followers, including myself, by announcing that she'd been living a lie. Apparently she had all those clothes at her <sup>1</sup>d \_\_\_\_\_ because different companies paid her to wear them. Every one of her photos was carefully staged and retouched.  
D: Oh, sorry to hear that.  
B: I've been so naive. I've read all her messages to <sup>2</sup>d \_\_\_\_\_ and honestly believed she looked great. Now she says she wore tons of make-up. True, she admits she was wrong and that now she'll help people understand that social media promote fake images.  
D: Well, she definitely should have told her fans in <sup>3</sup>a \_\_\_\_\_ that she was getting paid for the pictures and that she photoshopped them to such an extent. In any <sup>4</sup>c \_\_\_\_\_, she apologised to them and promised to help people.  
B: Yes, but maybe it's just another business idea of hers.  
D: Could be. Remember, Becky, at the <sup>5</sup>e \_\_\_\_\_ of the day everyone has to ask themselves a very important question: do I want to be honest at what I do or risk losing face if I'm not?  
B: Quite right. I'm glad we've had this conversation, Dad.

SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

4 Choose the correct phrase. Sometimes two are correct.

- 1 You may think what you want, but \_\_\_\_\_ it was a rookie mistake and you should've known better than to trust it.  
A by nature                      B at times  
C to my mind                    D at first glance
- 2 Geoff and his two co-workers ought to have notified us well \_\_\_\_\_ that they were planning on resigning.  
A in advance                    B in vain  
C by chance                      D in charge of
- 3 The trainees had all the company equipment \_\_\_\_\_ and they could make use of it as they saw fit.  
A in the wrong                    B at fault  
C in any case                      D at their disposal
- 4 I hope I'm mistaken but \_\_\_\_\_ the whole economy is going to suffer because of the government's decisions.  
A in the long run                    B by virtue of  
C in other words                    D by means of
- 5 56 percent has been the highest unemployment rate among young people in Spain \_\_\_\_\_.  
A by all means                    B at the end of the day  
C to date                          D at a loss
- 6 Sheila's parents believe she should seek employment as soon as possible and \_\_\_\_\_ she agrees with them.  
A to a certain degree                    B by accident  
C to some extent                    D at sea



5.5

LISTENING LANGUAGE PRACTICE

Synonyms • informal phrases  
• word building

1 Read the interview with Jonathan. It contains six examples of the word **important**. Choose the one word in brackets which cannot substitute the word **important** in the context given.

Extract from Student's Book recording 2.15

H: What would you say is the most **important** <sup>1</sup>(*crucial / essential / imperative*) thing people should do to prepare for a job interview?  
J: Well, thinking through your answers and doing plenty of research about the business and the position you're applying for <sup>a</sup>go without saying – ultimately there's <sup>b</sup>nothing more you can do about the direction the interview itself might take. I think cultivating self-assurance <sup>c</sup>plays a very big role – this will help you act as if you're confident when answering questions, though clearly without <sup>d</sup>going overboard or pretending you can do things you can't! [...] It's **important** <sup>2</sup>(*vital / imperative / considerable*) not to <sup>e</sup>dwell on your mistakes, but learn from them. And the odd slip is <sup>f</sup>not the end of the world. We're all <sup>g</sup>human after all. That said, willingness to <sup>h</sup>admit your missteps is very **important** <sup>3</sup>(*urgent / significant / influential*) and will be appreciated by the interviewer. And while confidence is **important** <sup>4</sup>(*fundamental / pivotal / essential*), avoid being self-aggrandising or boastful. [...] I think it's **important** <sup>5</sup>(*imperative / pressing / paramount*) to keep things in proportion. Every interview is **important** <sup>6</sup>(*extensive / critical / decisive*) and it's natural to be nervous – indeed I think for most people having no nerves is unrealistic and striving to do so could even be potentially detrimental.

2 Match definitions 1–7 to the underlined phrases a–h in the text. Write the letters in the boxes.



to do too much or try too hard to impress

- 1 to acknowledge the mistakes you make
- 2 to be very self-evident or obvious
- 3 to concentrate too much on your errors
- 4 not as big a problem as you may think
- 5 to be naturally prone to errors
- 6 to have a significant impact on something
- 7 out of your control or ability to influence

d

3 Complete the sentences. Use the most suitable underlined phrase from Exercise 1 in an appropriate form.

I know we're a little snowed under right now but there's no need to go overboard. Nobody expects you to work 24/7 and the boss won't notice you slaving away.

- 1 Whilst we all know that Grace was at fault for the error, we all accept that she's \_\_\_\_\_ and as liable to make mistakes as the rest of us.
- 2 That small company that Hannah sold became quite prosperous afterwards and she is really kicking herself for selling up so soon. Still, there's \_\_\_\_\_ it now.
- 3 Michael said he's having sleepless nights because of the feedback he got. I told him it's \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 In order to succeed as an actor, perseverance \_\_\_\_\_. Take Daniel Craig, for example, he'd been acting for years before he landed the role of James Bond.
- 5 Well, it \_\_\_\_\_ that Aiden's self-assurance is the reason behind his success.
- 6 Although it's crucial to be aware of the things you do wrong, it's not seen as being particularly useful to \_\_\_\_\_ for any great length of time.
- 7 How is Jorge ever going to learn if he refuses to \_\_\_\_\_? Surely it's the only way to improve.

WORD STORE 5F | Word building

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word in brackets.

A willingness (willing) to work hard and accept criticism is essential in your first post.

- 1 You really need to be \_\_\_\_\_ (adaptation) when you work as a journalist – your working conditions can change in the blink of an eye.
- 2 I know it's good to be enthusiastic but the intern's \_\_\_\_\_ (keen) is beginning to annoy me.
- 3 One of the most valued skills in a good teacher is \_\_\_\_\_ (resourceful).
- 4 Too much \_\_\_\_\_ (self-assured) is bound to make you unpopular with colleagues.
- 5 The *Harry Potter* books were rejected by publishers nine times before finally being printed. You have to admire J.K. Rowling's \_\_\_\_\_ (persistent).
- 6 The stamp on the reverse of this painting is proof of its \_\_\_\_\_ (authentic).
- 7 Fabio admitted to making the mistake in the payroll. You certainly can't question his \_\_\_\_\_ (sincere).
- 8 Most actors aren't known for their \_\_\_\_\_ (humble) but Keanu Reeves seems to be very down-to-earth.



5.6

SPEAKING

Buying time

1 Put the advice in the correct order.

When you respond to questions,  
to buy even more time.  
which give you time  
It is not unusual  
you can use expressions  
to put several of these phrases together  
to think about your answers.

1

2 Choose the correct words to complete the phrases.

- 1 Hmm, let me *see* / *think* about it for a second.
- 2 In actual fact, I've never really been *considered* / *asked* that before.
- 3 My mind has gone *frank* / *blank*.
- 4 I mean, to tell you the *honest* / *truth* ...
- 5 Well, all I can *say* / *know* is that ...
- 6 I suppose it *requires* / *depends* what you mean.

3 Complete the extracts from interviews. The first letters are given.



Interview 1: Joel

I: Tell me Joel, if you could have dinner with anyone at all, dead or alive, who would you choose and why?

J: Goodness, let me see. That <sup>1</sup>r\_\_\_\_\_ a m\_\_\_\_\_ t\_\_\_\_\_. You know, to be <sup>2</sup>f\_\_\_\_\_, I don't really fancy the idea of dinner with a dead person, so ... er ... definitely someone alive ... which narrows it down considerably. But ... I ... er ... I don't know really, to be <sup>3</sup>h\_\_\_\_\_ w\_\_\_\_\_ you, so ... maybe ... er ... Superman?

I: Erm ... I see. When I said dead or alive, I didn't actually mean ... Actually, you know what, Joel, I think we have everything we need. Thanks for coming and we'll be in touch. Possibly.

Interview 2: Philip

I: OK thank you, Philip. Before we wrap things up, is there anything else important you think we should know about you? Or do you have any questions?

P: Well, I <sup>4</sup>s\_\_\_\_\_ it d\_\_\_\_\_ w\_\_\_\_\_ you m\_\_\_\_\_ by important. Can I ask to what extent criminal background checks are searched?

Interview 3: Hannah

I: You've had four different jobs in the last two years Hannah, could you explain why there have been so many?

H: Well, <sup>5</sup>a\_\_\_\_\_ I c\_\_\_\_\_ s\_\_\_\_\_ is t\_\_\_\_\_ getting a job is something I find easy, but keeping it is sometimes more of a challenge.

Interview 4: Claire

I: Claire, the vacant position requires a good deal of autonomy. Tell us how you set your own personal targets at work.

C: Personal targets? Hmm, <sup>6</sup>c\_\_\_\_\_ you g\_\_\_\_\_ me a s\_\_\_\_\_?

I: Of course. Take your time.

C: OK, well, I try not to set my personal goals too high, because I find if you set your targets low, you will rarely be disappointed.

I: Thank you, Claire. No more questions.

Interview 5: Alicia

I: And tell us Alicia, what is it that motivates you more than anything else?

A: <sup>7</sup>A\_\_\_\_\_, that's a tough o\_\_\_\_\_. I mean, to <sup>8</sup>t\_\_\_\_\_ you the t\_\_\_\_\_, my main motivation is money. In fact, I think anyone who says anything different is probably lying.

Interview 6: Bradley

I: And could you tell us about what you consider to be your weaknesses?

B: <sup>9</sup>In a\_\_\_\_\_ f\_\_\_\_\_, I've never really <sup>10</sup>c\_\_\_\_\_ it. I'm not sure I have any.

I: Wouldn't you agree that everyone has weaknesses?

B: Hmm. I suppose so. <sup>11</sup>C\_\_\_\_\_ to t\_\_\_\_\_ of it, I guess I do have a weakness. I sometimes lie, or let's say I'm economical with the truth. But that should help me in this job, right?

I: Er ... that's all we have time for, Bradley. Thanks for coming and please ask the next candidate to come in on your way out.





## WRITING

5.7

An essay

## 1 Complete the advice with the correct forms of the words in brackets.

An essay should present a **structured** (structure) argument. It should be organised into paragraphs, each <sup>1</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (deal) with an aspect of the topic. In the introduction, <sup>2</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (familiar) the reader with the general topic, then lead into the discussion by <sup>3</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (acknowledge) different views or stating that a **solution** or discussion is necessary. In the body of the essay, introduce each main point in a new paragraph <sup>4</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (begin) with a topic sentence. Follow this with examples to support and/or <sup>5</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (clear) your point. You might also choose to introduce an <sup>6</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (oppose) point to show that you take a <sup>7</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (balance) view. In the conclusion, indicate the end of the essay with a summary <sup>8</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (state), then round things off by giving your own point of view.

## 2 Put the phrases in order.

that ... / generally / it / maintained / is

*It is generally maintained that ...*

- by ... / is / illustrated / this \_\_\_\_\_
- place ... / the / in / first \_\_\_\_\_
- everything / into / taking / account ... \_\_\_\_\_
- main / thing / the / remember / to / is ... \_\_\_\_\_
- seems / doubt / there / that ... / little \_\_\_\_\_
- a / point ... / in / case \_\_\_\_\_
- spite / of ... / in \_\_\_\_\_
- to / say ... / this / is \_\_\_\_\_

## 3 Complete the essay with the phrases from Exercise 2. There is one extra phrase.

Business has been a truly global affair for several decades now, and this has given rise to the prominence of English as the international language of commerce. While *it is generally maintained that* this is the status quo, recent shifts in economic prosperity and global trading relationships have led observers and analysts to question the long-term future of the current lingua franca. Can the language of Austen and Shakespeare hang on to the lead indefinitely, or are its days at the top of the pile numbered?

<sup>1</sup>\_\_\_\_\_, when both native and non-native speakers are factored in, English is far and away the most popular tongue on the planet. <sup>2</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ that in terms of sheer number of users, it is highly likely to remain at the forefront of worldwide trade for the foreseeable future. <sup>3</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ the impressive growth of Mandarin Chinese as a potential challenger, there is still a very long way to go before it can be considered truly global. <sup>4</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ the current improbability of a meeting between, for example, Arab, German and Brazilian business people being conducted in Mandarin rather than English.

Perhaps more probable than the toppling of the current language of choice, is the development of certain other **ones** as regional favourites. Mandarin once again is <sup>5</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ and may actually be a better option as a second language than English for Japanese or Korean businesses operating in and around the East Asian region.

<sup>6</sup>\_\_\_\_\_, English currently maintains a very strong position as a crucial tool for organisations and individuals wishing to operate commercially across borders. Despite the growing popularity of Mandarin, <sup>7</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ it will remain the commercial lingua franca for a significant time to come.

## 4 Complete the extracts. The first letters are given.

Animal testing is undoubtedly a **controversial** **topic** on which opinions are starkly divided.

1 A **p**\_\_\_\_\_ **c**\_\_\_\_\_ is that the welfare system in its current form is open to abuse to those without moral scruples.

2 The **m**\_\_\_\_\_ **t**\_\_\_\_\_ to **r**\_\_\_\_\_ is the importance of tolerance and equality rather than fear and ignorance.

3 **W**\_\_\_\_\_ **c**\_\_\_\_\_ be **d**\_\_\_\_\_ to tackle the persistent problem of youth unemployment and make sure that all young people have the chance to earn a living?

4 **O**\_\_\_\_\_ the **w**\_\_\_\_\_, it would seem that a combination of individual action and government investment are most likely to provide a solution.

5 **I**\_\_\_\_\_ the **f**\_\_\_\_\_ **p**\_\_\_\_\_, businesses can certainly learn from their customers' comments and complaints.

6 **H**\_\_\_\_\_, there are **d**\_\_\_\_\_ **v**\_\_\_\_\_ when it comes to the question of exactly what should be done about such human rights abuse.

7 There are, however, still many questions to be answered. **I**\_\_\_\_\_ **o**\_\_\_\_\_ **w**\_\_\_\_\_, a solution is still a long way off.

8 It is **c**\_\_\_\_\_ **t**\_\_\_\_\_ the pluses outweigh the minuses in this particular case.

## 5 Find the following cohesive features in the model essay.

- Two forms from the same word family as *commerce*  
**commercial** <sup>1</sup>\_\_\_\_\_
- Two synonyms for the word *business*  
<sup>2</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ <sup>3</sup>\_\_\_\_\_
- A synonym for the word *language*  
<sup>4</sup>\_\_\_\_\_
- Two synonyms for the word *global*  
<sup>5</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ <sup>6</sup>\_\_\_\_\_
- Two forms from the same word family as *probably*  
<sup>7</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ <sup>8</sup>\_\_\_\_\_
- A synonym for the word *choice*  
<sup>9</sup>\_\_\_\_\_
- A linker with a similar meaning as *although*  
<sup>10</sup>\_\_\_\_\_
- A linker with a similar meaning as *in spite of*  
<sup>11</sup>\_\_\_\_\_
- The word that *ones* (in bold in the text) is substituting  
<sup>12</sup>\_\_\_\_\_

## REMEMBER THIS

- When substituting a word already mentioned, we **do not** use **one** to replace **uncountable nouns**:  
*Would you prefer chocolate cake or lemon ~~one~~?*
- We **do not** use **one** immediately after *a/an*.  
*If you'd like a pear, pick a **one** from the tree.*

## REMEMBER THIS

**This** and **it** can be used to refer back to previously mentioned situations. **This** is more emphatic than **it** and suggests that an interesting new fact has been mentioned.  
*She banged her head on the car door. **It** really hurt.*  
*She banged her head on the car door. **This** really hurt and made her dizzy.*

## 6 Read REMEMBER THIS. Correct the mistakes.

Sometimes more than one answer may be possible.

- Unemployment isn't just a statistic; this is a source of misery. *it*
- Would you prefer a creative job or an administrative?  
\_\_\_\_\_
  - There are several possible solutions, but this essay will examine a one in particular. \_\_\_\_\_
  - Young people need a solution, a workable ones, and quickly. \_\_\_\_\_
  - There are some standard subjects I like, but Chemistry is not it. \_\_\_\_\_
  - Schools can be very traditional places. Some would say that is contributing to youth unemployment. \_\_\_\_\_
  - Young people lack support while applying for work. It is one reason why so many CVs are substandard. \_\_\_\_\_

## SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

## 7 Read the writing task. Then follow the instructions below.

There are various ways in which the problem of youth unemployment could be solved. Write an essay in which you discuss the following solutions and present your opinion:

- offering more vocational training at schools.
- increasing financial incentives for employers to take on young people.
- mentoring young people as they apply for jobs.

- Think of examples to illustrate the positive aspects of each solution.
- Think of any possible negative aspects of each solution.
- Decide which you think is the most important and why.
- Decide how you will begin. It is good to use a rhetorical question to start the discussion.
- Use cohesive devices to make your argument clear and easy to follow.
- Think of a logical conclusion. What is your point of view?
- Write your essay.

## SHOW THAT YOU'VE CHECKED

Finished? Always check your writing (especially in the exam!) Can you tick ✓ everything on this list?

In my essay:

- in the first paragraph, I have given a general introduction to the topic and included a lead-in to the discussion. ☐
- in the main body, I have ... ☐
- introduced each main point in a new paragraph. ☐
- begun each main paragraph with a topic sentence. ☐
- included examples to support and clarify my point. ☐
- introduced an opposing point to demonstrate a balanced view. ☐
- in the conclusion, I have indicated the end of the essay with a summary statement and given my point of view. ☐
- I have used a reasonably formal and impersonal style. ☐
- I have checked my spelling. ☐
- I have checked my handwriting is neat enough for someone else to read. ☐



## 5.8 SELF-CHECK

## VOCABULARY

- 1 Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first. Do not change the words in capitals. Use between two and four words in each gap.

Anne disliked her first job as an assistant secretary because she only fetched coffee and did some photocopying. **TASKS**

Since Anne only did some *menial tasks* in her first job, she disliked it.

- 1 Jim travels a lot on business but he doesn't spend any of his money – everything is covered by his company. **COVERS**

Jim's company \_\_\_\_\_ whenever he goes on a business trip.

- 2 He remembered I had supported him then. **UP**

He remembered \_\_\_\_\_ him then.

- 3 We admired how persistent he was looking for a job. **HIS**

We admired \_\_\_\_\_ in looking for a job.

- 4 Soon after Roger started his own business, he earned a lot of money. **MINT**

Roger \_\_\_\_\_ soon after he started his own business.

- 5 We all knew Kate was unfairly fired, but no one was courageous enough to say this to the manager. **GUTS**

Nobody \_\_\_\_\_ to say anything to the manager though we all knew sacking Kate was unfair.

/5

- 2 Complete the sentences with the correct prepositions.

It should be easy for you to break *into* the job market since you've got so much experience already.

- 1 My brother has been singing praises about working \_\_\_\_\_ commission because he's a really great salesman.

- 2 Chris seems to be able to establish a great rapport \_\_\_\_\_ whoever works in the office.

- 3 It's just a part-time holiday job, so no wonder she works \_\_\_\_\_ a pittance.

- 4 Is there anything I can do to make \_\_\_\_\_ for all the time you spent here last Saturday?

- 5 I don't know how he can stand being ordered \_\_\_\_\_ in such a manner! I would quit the job if I were him!

/5

- 3 Choose the correct word.

Advances in technology have made a lot of people realise the *(potential)/tenacity/start-up* of working from home. Some of them are finding a way to turn what was a hobby into paid work despite fluctuations in the *tax/revenue/commission* at first. I used to enjoy my job as a teacher, even though I didn't have a(n) *phony/entry-level/permanent* contract. Things changed, however, when we got a new, young and very bossy head teacher. At first I didn't want to *enthuse/scupper/strive* my chances of getting a full-time post but finally, completely disillusioned, I decided to leave.

Friends warned me that a job with a minimum *wage/salary/perk* was better than no job at all, but I do not regret turning my love of gardening into a business. Yes, it took time to get my *hand/leg/foot* in the door, but I would still recommend it highly.

/5

## GRAMMAR

- 4 Complete the sentences with the correct forms of the verbs in brackets.

Despite *having* (have) a lot of ideas, he still hasn't made up his mind what to do in his life.

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_ (Not/know) that she could reach the meeting point from a different street, Sarah missed seeing her friend.

- 2 \_\_\_\_\_ (On/see) Jo's commitment to the project, we've decided to make her the leader of it.

- 3 Most teenagers \_\_\_\_\_ (not/ask) for permission before their parents share some information or photos from their childhood.

- 4 \_\_\_\_\_ (find) guilty of stealing some important data from an advertising company, Holly was sacked.

- 5 The trade unions are opposed to \_\_\_\_\_ (freeze) employees' wages because of their lack of experience.

/5

- 5 Complete the sentences with the words in brackets in the correct forms. Do not change the word order. Use no more than six words in each gap.

*Having spent hours learning* (spend/hour/learn) to operate a new app, Alba decided to ask for help.

- 1 It was interesting to see how quickly the new coach \_\_\_\_\_ (succeed/change/relationship) the players.

- 2 \_\_\_\_\_ (use/explain/you) absence at the meeting of the team. She won't listen to you anyway.

- 3 The psychologist \_\_\_\_\_ (overhear/applicant/talk) problems she had given them to solve when she was waiting for the lift.

- 4 \_\_\_\_\_ (not/complete/train) nurses, I can't even think about a job in a care centre for elderly people.

- 5 With \_\_\_\_\_ (more/time/use) by apprentices getting to know the trade nowadays, I can see no future for my line of work.

/5

- 6 Choose the correct expression.

The difference in results from these two groups might have come about *(by chance)/in advance/at a loss*.

- 1 Yes, I've read your analysis but I'm still *at fault/in the wrong/at sea* as to how to apply it in our company.

- 2 At times of such deep economic crisis the government cannot solve its financial problems *by means of/in any case/to date* new taxes.

- 3 Don't even think that you're training *in advance/in the long run/to no avail*! I'm sure it'll pay off.

- 4 I can see your point, but *to my mind/at the end of the day/in any case* this time your line manager is right.

- 5 There are far too many accidents that happen at building sites in our country. Who do you think is *at a loss/in the wrong/at fault*?

/5

Total /30

## USE OF ENGLISH

- 7 Choose the correct answer A, B, C or D.

## Working round the clock

Nearly two million adults attempting to start up a new business in the UK are doing so while at the same time *C* at their 'day job.' This implies that after being <sup>1</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ under with work all day, these people then have to go home and <sup>2</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ yet more time and energy, not to mention a good deal of money, in their business. It must be tough to hit the <sup>3</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ running *like* this after a hard day's work, particularly if it is uncertain whether the effort will eventually <sup>4</sup>\_\_\_\_\_. I suspect that not many of us would feel <sup>5</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ even to contemplate doing this.

Of course the advantage of keeping on a permanent job is to guarantee a stable <sup>6</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ in order to be able to make ends <sup>7</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ and establish some useful contacts at the same time. It also means you have somebody to talk to during the working day. <sup>8</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ as all that, it is useful back-up in case everything goes wrong!

- |                   |               |
|-------------------|---------------|
| A enduring        | B holding     |
| <i>C sticking</i> | D clinging    |
| 1 A snowed        | B rained      |
| C blown           | D flooded     |
| 2 A lay           | B invest      |
| C consume         | D put         |
| 3 A land          | B road        |
| C earth           | D ground      |
| 4 A pay off       | B pay up      |
| C pay back        | D pay out     |
| 5 A tenacious     | B menial      |
| C eager           | D detrimental |
| 6 A payment       | B reward      |
| C revenue         | D income      |
| 7 A strap         | B meet        |
| C tie             | D link        |
| 8 A Moreover      | B On top      |
| C As well         | D In addition |

/8

- 8 Complete the text with the correct form of the words in brackets.

For the past several years, the highly profitable company Leveroy Inc. has been ranked among the top five most desirable employers worldwide. Every year, more than a million *applicants* (apply) hope to be taken on, lured by perks which include subsidised childcare, dog sitting, big bonuses and free meals.

Inevitably, there is a hyper-<sup>1</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (compete) atmosphere at Leveroy, and nobody is quite sure of how <sup>2</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (recruit) decisions are made apart from the necessity to fit in with the company culture. A large amount of <sup>3</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (resource) and an unusually high level of <sup>4</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (adapt) is clearly required of every employee. However, there is also a need for <sup>5</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (humble), as staff are expected to demonstrate a <sup>6</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (willing) to step up and admit their mistakes. As the team includes former Olympians and people of immense intellectual stature, many people would find the concept of working there extremely intimidating. This is just as well, because for every hundred people who are interviewed, ninety-nine are turned away.

/6

- 9 Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first. Do not change the words in capitals. Use between four and six words in each gap.

I suggest becoming an intern during the summer so that you know if nursing is for you or not. **INTERNSHIP**  
It'd be a good idea for you *to do an internship* during the summer so that you know if nursing is for you or not.

- 1 Don't you think you should do some English revision before going to work abroad? **BRUSH**  
Before going to work abroad you should \_\_\_\_\_ English, don't you think?
- 2 Despite the introduction of uniforms for his staff without consulting anybody first, there was no apology from the school principal. **APOLOGISE**  
The school principal \_\_\_\_\_ uniforms for his staff despite not consulting anybody first.
- 3 One of our staff will be available to help you at all times during your visit. **DISPOSAL**  
During your visit, one of our staff will \_\_\_\_\_ at all times.
- 4 Maria despises working overtime against her will, mainly because she's a single mother. **FORCED**  
Maria \_\_\_\_\_ overtime, mainly because she's a single mother.
- 5 Stop pretending that nothing's the matter and tell me what's wrong. **BRAVE**  
Stop \_\_\_\_\_ and tell me what's wrong.
- 6 Did you see Anne being sacked by Betty? **SACKING**  
Did \_\_\_\_\_?

/6

Total /20



# 6 Journeys

6.1

## VOCABULARY

Travel and sightseeing • phrasal verbs  
• suffixes • colloquial expressions

### SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

1 Label the pictures. The first letters are given.



boot 1 b \_\_\_\_\_ 2 g \_\_\_\_\_ 3 o \_\_\_\_\_  
c \_\_\_\_\_ s \_\_\_\_\_ l \_\_\_\_\_



4 p \_\_\_\_\_ 5 p \_\_\_\_\_ 6 q \_\_\_\_\_ 7 r \_\_\_\_\_

2 Complete the signs with the words and phrases from the box.

aisle bypass cruise embarkation  
express gate jetlag sleeper

Beds in the sleeper carriages are made up by train staff between 8 and 9 p.m.

Please do not leave luggage in the 1 as access to exits is required at all times.

2 for first class passengers (cabin numbers 1-50) via gangways 1-3.

Passengers for Ryanair flight FR65 to Liverpool may now board at 3 17.

Beat 4 with a fully reclining seat in Emirates business class.

5 closed for works. For airport access follow signs for E45/City Centre.

Passenger Notice: The Edinburgh to London 6 has been cancelled due to snow on the tracks.

7 passengers please note that playing music from mobile phone speakers is strictly prohibited inside the ship.

### WORD STORE 6A | Phrasal verbs

3 Add the correct particles to complete the phrasal verbs in the text.

## Bikes, bags and a trip across the country

My father was a competitive long-distance cyclist who took part in races all over the world, and he passed on his love of cycling to me. Not that I could ever pass 1 a professional like my dad, but I do enjoy the sport and ride as often as I can. Last summer, I suggested a long-distance bikepacking trip to some fellow enthusiasts. Although we were all a bit intimidated by the 136 hilly miles of the Sea-to-Sea route in the North of England, we agreed to give it a go. We carried everything in our bags, including the tents, so that we would not be ripped 2 by greedy B & B owners, and we were foolish enough to bank 3 the weather being fine, which in the UK is always a risk.

As we set off, we were a rather scruffy-looking group, with our older bikes and out-of-date gear, so we didn't exactly fit in 4 the more professional-looking riders we met on the way. This mattered less and less as we progressed along the route, though, since we were more preoccupied with our aching legs, freezing feet and soggy clothing. We were proud of ourselves for heading 5 disaster by taking shelter in an old shepherd's hut during a sudden snowstorm, and even prouder that we avoided burning the hut 6 when we started a fire in the crumbling fireplace. In other words, our expectations were not high, and just the fact that we managed to complete the route in one piece – and to have a good time along the way – was reward enough.



### WORD STORE 6B | Suffixes – forming adjectives

4 Complete the text with adjectives made from the words in the box and the correct suffixes.

bear daunt flap hand  
mind relate respect sweat

## youcannotbeserious.com

After working hard all year and saving up to be able to afford a fortnight in the sun, it's understandable that holidaymakers complain if things aren't up to standard. However, some complaints tip over into the unreasonable and even the bizarre ...

- My wife and I find foreign languages very daunting and were disappointed to discover that all the taxi drivers in Madrid spoke Spanish.
- The 1 towels hung out to dry by the people in the room next to us made so much noise our late afternoon snoozes were all but impossible.
- No one warned us how hot Egypt 2 would be in July and I found myself unpleasantly 2 at times.
- Our tour guide was so ugly that we were unable to appreciate the beautiful views. Tour operators should be 3 of the fact that ugly tour guides make it difficult for holidaymakers to enjoy sight-seeing tours.
- It would have been 4 to know that the hot-air balloon rides are not suitable for people who are afraid of heights.
- I thought I had found a perfectly 5 hostel, although I did wonder about all the uniforms in the website photos. When I arrived, it turned out to be a boarding school.
- Sitting around the pool was just about 6 but the beach was far too sandy to lie on.
- The flight back from Jamaica to the UK lasted nine hours. 7 to the Americans, who were home in just three hours, this seems unfair.

### WORD STORE 6C | EXTRA Suffixes – forming adjectives

5 Complete the text. The first letters are given. Use the definitions in brackets to help you.

Delightful (charming) mountain chalet for rent in Finkenberg, Austria. Sleeps from six to eight in two bedrooms plus 1d (able to be split into separate parts) living area with two sofa beds. 2N (located next door) cable car provides direct access to Tyrolean peaks for walking, biking and winter sports. 3S (composing of small pieces of rock) parking area plus 4g (turfed) garden for barbecues, etc. 5C (similar or better to others in the same area) prices with discounts for longer stays.

Contact vero@chaletveronica.at for more information.

6 Complete the sentences with adjectives formed from the words in brackets.

Weather conditions are variable (vary) at this time of year so it's best to pack for all eventualities.

- 1 The bellboy was actually quite \_\_\_\_\_ (force) when insisting on carrying our bags up to the room.
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_ (dwindle) tourist numbers have forced many bars and restaurants on the seafront to close down.
- 3 It's easy to forget that behaviour which is acceptable at home may be \_\_\_\_\_ (offend) in other countries.
- 4 The projected impact on the coastline was \_\_\_\_\_ (decide) in the refusal to grant permission for a new hotel.

### WORD STORE 6D | Colloquial phrases

7 Complete the tourists' comments. The first letters are given.

'It drives me crazy when tourists say 'Oh, we've done Japan already' after they've spent a week in Tokyo. Travel is more than just a tick-box exercise.'

'Make sure you have the address of your hostel and enough money for a taxi. It's a 1j o t !'

'My brother's 2w of w before my trip were limited to "Don't forget your toothbrush."'

'I've only planned as far as Buenos Aires and after that I'm just going to see what happens and 3g w the f.'

'Rather than 4s u the l a, the torrential rain left us soaking wet in a local café.'

'The vaccines are expensive, but they will 5s you in g s for at least two years of travelling'.

### SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

8 Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.

- 1 The train was cramped but bearable / mindful in comparison with the bus we'd taken the day before.
- 2 Don't check / bank on good visibility if you are visiting the lakes during the winter months.
- 3 The number of visitors is decisive / dwindling because of the rumours about scams and rip-offs.
- 4 Going with the flow / fit is good until you discover all the accommodation on the island is booked out.
- 5 Gerry and Philis have been coming to the resort so long that they almost pass for / on locals.
- 6 Respectable / Relative to most European capital cities, eating out in Reykjavik is extremely expensive.
- 7 The price per night for the cottage is variable / divisible by the number of guests staying.
- 8 The idea of having to travel alone was daunting / delightful enough to give me a sleepless night.
- 9 Stallholders here can be very forceful / neighbouring when trying to persuade you to buy their goods.
- 10 A paper map will stand you in good head / stead if your phone battery dies or the signal is lost.

/10



## READING

6.2

Cambodia • adjectives • phrases  
• descriptive verbs/adjectives

- 1 Look at the blog title and the photo. Which topics do you think are **not** mentioned in the text? Read quickly and check.

food prices ☐  
local transport ☐

language problems ☐  
places of interest ☐

## My Asian Travel blog

Two weeks after arriving in Cambodia, I've finally found time to update the blog, this time from a crumbling but friendly Internet café in Phnom Penh. Though harrowing at times – if only because of the somewhat rough travel conditions – Cambodia has proved to be a feast for the senses, and has reminded me of the capacity of travel to make you reassess what is important in life.

1 ☐ After many months as a solo traveller, I appear to have lost my shyness, and confidently strike up conversations with anyone who looks like they might be willing to exchange tips or share a ride. So with newly-recruited travel companions in tow, it's a three-hour journey ahead to Siem Reap, home to the temples of Angkor, spectacular remnants\* of the ancient Khmer civilisation.

2 ☐ Such journeys lead to healthy appetites and, as we head out for dinner that night feeling happy to be alive, we are made all the more **ravenous** by the **ubiquitous** smell of burning wood that permeates\* the air. The source of these inviting wafts\* is actually the hardwood charcoal that burns and smoulders\* all day in the population's small clay stoves and beneath its woks and pots of soup.

3 ☐ I make the mistake of being tempted by the traditional after-dinner drink – coffee. Dinner finishes with several hot cups, which back at the hostel keep me awake until the early hours.

4 ☐ It is difficult to describe the feelings you experience while exploring Angkor Wat. Built in the 12th century under the rather **volatile** rule of King Suryavarman II, it covers nearly 400 acres and it is considered the largest religious site in the world. Its sheer size, combined with its artistic extravagance, make it an illustration of how even the greatest achievements of humans can nearly be erased by the forces of nature.



5 ☐ At night, clubs such as 'The Heart of Darkness' draw patrons into their dingy depths, where visitors and locals writhe\* to **pulsating** electronic beats. By day, it is the pure energy of the city and its inhabitants that draws visitors into its reverberating, spice-scented streets.

6 ☐ As I pack up my fancy camera and expensive shoes and head for the coast, it is difficult not to contrast the general dissatisfaction of people in my home country, despite their wealth and privilege, with the optimism of the Cambodian people. At least now I have a new perspective, and later this year, when I return home, I will try to recall the positivity of these charming people, and begin every day thinking how truly lucky I am.

- 2 Read the text again. Match paragraphs A–G with gaps 1–6. There is one extra paragraph.

A It is the latter of these delights that my new friends and I opt for that evening. Originating in Vietnam, the Cambodian version of pho we hungrily slurp\* is, like much of the country's cuisine, a delicious combination of bitter and sweet, sour and salty, presented simply and accompanied by myriad condiments.

B Here, I am happy to walk randomly through lively markets and pass spirited street vendors pushing rolling woks and grills on wheels, riding motorbikes with stoves attached to the side, and cruising on bicycles with mango-filled baskets attached to the back. The scene is one of hustle and bustle and is frankly a little overwhelming at first, but also gives me a sense of self-assurance which I have rarely felt.

C Having crossed the Thai border into Poipet, I weigh up my options for onward travel. An old public bus rumoured to take around six hours, a tourist mini-bus leaving in two hours, or a taxi offering relative comfort and immediate departure. I decide on the taxi and quickly accost\* three strangers, fellow travellers, who are thankfully happy to share the cost and the journey.

D In fact the overwhelming attitude is 'onwards and upwards'. The city is overflowing with life and is a bustling business and cultural hub. I chat to 'Chivy', the owner of a small coffee stall, who tells me her name means 'life', which seems highly appropriate as she is bursting with it. Like many young entrepreneurs, she's working all hours to turn only a small profit, but her optimism is unshakeable and her smile as infectious as those worn by the majority of the population.

E Putting such thoughts aside for the moment, it's onwards to the capital which, to be honest, is as scruffy as Angkor is breathtaking. But Phnom Penh has a **tantalising** rawness to it, and a non-stop sense of life that I find truly mesmerising.

F The journey from the city to the temple complex is a long one, but my driver zips along with great confidence, and while daylight lasts the stunning scenery is enough of a distraction that the distance almost doesn't matter. After a staggeringly beautiful sunset, darkness does make the trip stretch out, and I admit to feeling pretty exhausted towards the end of the trip. But I wouldn't have missed it for anything.

G A touch **bleary-eyed**, I clamber\* onto the back of a motorbike taxi the next morning and head for the Angkor Wat Temple Complex. I will not even try to put into words the majesty of the place. Suffice to say the countless **hyperbolic** descriptions that decorate the guidebooks and blogs can be taken pretty much at face value. It is a fascinating window onto what used to be a highly-developed civilisation.

- 3 Match the adjectives in bold in the text to the definitions.

- crumbling** – disintegrating gradually over time  
1 \_\_\_\_\_ – present, appearing or found everywhere  
2 \_\_\_\_\_ – changing rapidly and unpredictably, especially for the worse  
3 \_\_\_\_\_ – extremely sad or distressing  
4 \_\_\_\_\_ – particularly hungry  
5 \_\_\_\_\_ – deliberately exaggerated  
6 \_\_\_\_\_ – pleasantly inviting  
7 \_\_\_\_\_ – producing a regular beating sensation or sound  
8 \_\_\_\_\_ – having dim or watery eyes because of tiredness

- 4 Complete the phrases with the words from the box. Use the text to help you. There are two extra words.

bustle countless feast nature suffice  
unshakeable value weighed word

The floats, music and costumes all make the carnival a true **feast for the senses**.

- 1 Though I had my doubts about the truth, I decided to **take the news at face** \_\_\_\_\_.  
2 The fact that I grew up in the **hustle and** \_\_\_\_\_ of a big city means I appreciate the peace and quiet of the countryside more than most people I know.  
3 I'll spare you the details, but Jeremy was furious. \_\_\_\_\_ **to say** we insisted on being moved to a better room.  
4 Having \_\_\_\_\_ **up our options**, we decided on two-hour ski lessons in the mornings.  
5 Susie is the most positive person I know. She never gives up, even in the hardest of times. You've got to admire her \_\_\_\_\_ **optimism**.  
6 I cannot believe he didn't pack any waterproof clothing. We should never underestimate the **forces of** \_\_\_\_\_, especially in the mountains.

## WORD STORE 6E | Descriptive verbs/adjectives

- 5 Choose the correct words to complete the sentences with the most likely collocations.

- 1 The temple bell *chugged* / *clanged* and hundreds of orange-robed monks appeared from nowhere.  
2 The Fernsehturm, Berlin's iconic television mast, *towers* / *staggers* over the city and makes a handy reference point for lost visitors.  
3 The spectacular views were sorely missing as the peak was *bounded* / *shrouded* in cloud on the day of our visit.  
4 The reflected city lights *twinkle* / *flutter* on the water creating a magical view out across the harbour.  
5 We continued to wave our goodbyes from the platform as the train *receded* / *roamed* into the distance.  
6 The climbers *trundled* / *slackened* their pace as they took in the enormity of their task.

## GLOSSARY

**accost** (v) – approach and address someone boldly or aggressively

**remnant** (n) – a part or quantity left over after the larger part has been removed

**permeate** (v) – spread throughout

**waft** (v/n) – a gentle movement of air, or of odour or sound through air

**smoulder** (v) – burn slowly with smoke but no flame

**slurp** (v/n) – a loud sucking noise made while drinking or eating

**clamber** (v/n) – climb with difficulty

**writhe** (v) – make twisting movements with the body



6.3

GRAMMAR

Advanced comparative structures

SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

1 Complete the text messages with the correct comparative forms of the words from the box. There are three extra adjectives.

bad far few high near  
little old pretty slow

Bad news ☹ ! I was robbed on the underground! Can my day get any worse? Will write soon ...

Have to cancel our trip ☹ My <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ sister was in a boating accident.

Should you have any queries, please visit our website for <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ details.

Disaster ☹! Our holiday resort offers <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ tourist attractions than the one we visited last year. Will keep you posted. Bye!

Thanks for the tip! The tour guide was an excellent choice ☺! My parents speak <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ of him than the one in Madrid. Luv you!

I opted for a cheap B & B. It's much <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ the city centre than I thought.

2 ★ Correct the mistakes.

The wind is getting more strong and more strong.  
stronger and stronger

- The journey was tougher than dangerous.
- Lisa and Donald are such a friendly people that I'd love to settle down in their neighbourhood.
- As steeper the slope, as more difficult it is to ski.
- On reaching their destination, the tourists weren't so much exhausted than irritated.
- When Jack and his co-climbers looked at the surrounding peaks, they were overwhelmed rather than thrilled.

REMEMBER THIS

Usually adjectives follow articles *a/an*, but in formal writing (with words like **as** and **so**) they precede them:

*That hotel has got a nice swimming pool, just like ours.*  
→ *That hotel has got **as nice a** swimming pool **as** ours.*

3 ★ ★ Complete the dialogues using the words in capitals. Write between three and four words in each gap.

A: And? Going to Mexico alone wasn't a good idea, was it? **SUCH**

B: Well, it wasn't such a bad idea, either. I had a chance to brush up on my Spanish.

1 A: I believe London is a more enchanting city than Edinburgh. **CITY**

B: That's unfair! Edinburgh is \_\_\_\_\_ as London!

2 A: Our tour guide seems rather distracted, don't you think? **MUCH**

B: I wouldn't say that. She isn't \_\_\_\_\_ disorganised.

3 A: I reckon the package tour was a fantastic offer. **SO**

B: On the contrary! It wasn't \_\_\_\_\_ offer as I had previously thought.

4 ★ ★ ★ Correct each sentence by completing it with one missing word. The first letters of the missing words are given in brackets.

Unspoilt beauty spots are becoming rarer <sup>and</sup> rarer to find. (a)

- People have easy access to budget flights nowadays that they've forgotten flying used to be a luxury. (s)
- For adrenalin junkies an active holiday is not much a pleasure as a necessity. (s)
- That safari in Kenya wasn't as big an adventure the organisers would have us believe. (a)
- As a general rule, the earlier you book holidays, cheaper they are. (t)

SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

5 Complete the text with one word in each gap.

A room with a view, please

More and more hotel managers bend over backwards to make their guests happy, and being offered a room with a breathtaking view is undoubtedly every holidaymaker's top requirement. However, the more we travel, the <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ easily impressed we become and if a hotel aims at making us awe-struck <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ than merely satisfied, it has to go to great lengths these days.

The hotel in the Zoo de La Flèche in France's Loire Valley, for instance, is not <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ typical a place as it seems. It boasts floor-to-ceiling windows through which you can look straight into a polar bear enclosure. Anyone who has stayed there describes the view as not so <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ cute as jaw-dropping.

After spending the night in the next hotel, Skylodge Adventure Suite in Peru, you are guaranteed to be <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ thrilled than rested. To get to your room, first you need to climb a 400ft cliff face. Every suite is a transparent capsule that clings to a mountain peak and offers guests spectacular 300-degree views of the majestic Sacred Valley from £180 a night per person. It is <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ an extreme adventure that only real daredevils have the courage to check in.

Sweet dreams!





# USE OF ENGLISH

Words and phrases with ever

## 1 Put the word ever in the appropriate place in each sentence.

- In our school we hardly <sup>ever</sup> go on field trips.
- 1 We tried everything, but nothing seems to attract his attention for more than a minute.
  - 2 If you're in Colorado, a visit to the Grand Canyon is a must.
  - 3 Since I can remember, I've steered clear of well-trodden paths.
  - 4 They hoped to settle down somewhere in Tuscany and live happily after.

## 2 Complete the dialogue with the words from the box. There are two extra words.

ever however whatever whenever  
wherever whichever whoever why ever

- Mel:** Chloe, now that you've secured your place at the university, it may be worth considering taking a gap year. It's your best ever opportunity to travel, earn money and get work experience. What do you say?
- Chloe:** Mmm, I'm not so sure. <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ I think I'm ready to take the plunge, I come across an article like this and it puts me off going.
- Mel:** What do you mean?
- Chloe:** Well, it says here that <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ is thinking of taking a gap year should think twice as they can get more than they bargain for. According to this expert, although young people who volunteer to help in orphanages, schools, animal sanctuaries or <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ have good intentions, unscrupulous people may take advantage of them.
- Mel:** How so?
- Chloe:** <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ there's money involved, there's bound to be someone who wants to get rich fast. In this case, a girl from Oxford went to an orphanage in Asia only to find out that the children she met weren't orphans at all! They had families who had been persuaded by the orphanage founder to send their children there to make money off gap-year volunteers, who paid for the opportunity to help them!
- Mel:** That's outrageous! But <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ depressing this news is, don't give up on the idea of a gap-year adventure. Just do some research beforehand to make sure you choose a legitimate institution.
- Chloe:** I guess you're right.

## 3 Replace the underlined phrases with the correct combinations with ever.

- Fewer and fewer tourists visit us as the problem of terrorist attacks is always present here. ever-present
- 1 Our travel budget is very tight and we prefer to camp on the outskirts to keep the costs down. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 2 Italian cafés with views of famous landmarks as always charge exorbitant prices even for an espresso. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 3 Whenever we make a stopover in Madrid, we stay at a very quaint hotel near Barajas airport. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 4 Once backpackers were adult travellers, but these days we bump into younger and younger explorers. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 5 British policemen are very helpful when you need to ask somebody for directions. \_\_\_\_\_

## SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

### 4 Complete each set of sentences with the same word.

- a On landing in Washington, as ever, the whole group was interviewed by a customs officer.
  - b When we got to Sharm el-Sheikh, there were fewer British holidaymakers than ever.
  - c On New Year's Eve in Sydney all those looking at the bridge saw the greatest ever fireworks display.
- 1 a I'm planning on going around Europe in my car and I'll take \_\_\_\_\_ wants to go with me to split the costs.
  - b When you're done with that travel magazine, just lend it to Florence or Noah or \_\_\_\_\_.
  - c \_\_\_\_\_ could be texting me at such an ungodly hour?
- 2 a We could study at my house or \_\_\_\_\_, I don't mind.
  - b \_\_\_\_\_ did you find that information?
  - c Come out, come out, \_\_\_\_\_ you are!
- 3 a I'm really fed up because \_\_\_\_\_ I suggest, my classmates always disagree with me.
  - b Before passing through the metal detector gates, you'll have to take out \_\_\_\_\_ items you have in your pockets.
  - c \_\_\_\_\_ the real reason for his absence is, I still think we should let him know that we're unhappy about this.
- 4 a It's not fair that my parents blame me \_\_\_\_\_ my younger brother bursts into tears.
  - b \_\_\_\_\_ is she going to learn that asking people blatantly how much they earn is plain rude?
  - c I'm afraid today I have to take a rain check, but we could meet tomorrow or \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 a Why \_\_\_\_\_ did you tell our parents that we'd be more than happy to go on holiday with them?
  - b To my exasperation, the queue to the check-in moved \_\_\_\_\_ so slowly.
  - c I love sitting in an airport as it is \_\_\_\_\_ such a good place for making observations concerning passengers.
- 6 a When you go climbing, you need to follow all safety requirements, \_\_\_\_\_ experienced you are.
  - b Planning your holiday from scratch is exciting, \_\_\_\_\_, it's quite time consuming.
  - c \_\_\_\_\_ did they manage to trek across those mountains in just two days?




6.5

LISTENING LANGUAGE PRACTICE

Indefinite article *a/an* • prepositions  
• informal phrases with *keep*

1 The article *a/an* has been removed from the conversation. The number in brackets indicates how many more are missing in each section. Complete the missing articles.

Extract from Student's Book recording  2.26

W1: My friends talked *about* taking <sup>a</sup> cruise, that it was great for seeing places without taking risks – and I'd actually wanted to give it go for while. [...] I opted to cruise <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ South America, which took me to incredible locations I could only have reached after hours of planning. [...] I guess that was the bottom line <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ me – my job is demanding and I value my leisure time so I need to use what time I have wisely. (2)

M1: I love surfing and last summer my mate and I planned trip where we played it <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ ear, just rolling <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ at beaches as we chose. [...] As we had no particular destination <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ mind, we kept our eye <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ social media to check where the good surf was. (1)

M2: What swung it for me was not that friends who'd done something similar said how good experience it was but that I was able to pay for everything <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ advance. My spa resort happened to be way <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ in the mountains – isolated and stunningly beautiful – so I could disconnect <sup>9</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ everything that normally gets me down. [...] <sup>10</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ chance, I met lovely people, too, and I've kept in touch with them ever since. (1)

2 Complete the conversation with the correct prepositions.

3 Look at sentences 1–7, which all contain expressions with *keep*. Read the sentences and match the expressions in bold to definitions a–g.

- 1 When travelling alone, you really need to **keep your wits about you** – and especially if you stray off the beaten track.
- 2 You hear of some dreadful things happening to tourists in some parts of the world. One way to protect yourself is to **keep abreast of** local news and ensure you contact people back home on a regular basis.
- 3 Vaccinations are a necessity if you are travelling to Africa and want to **keep** yellow fever **at bay**. You'll need to get your injections and beware the nasty side effects of headaches and muscle pains.
- 4 Many people suffer from homesickness when away from home for a long period of time. The only advice I can give is to **keep your chin up** and make the most of your adventures.
- 5 We met this really funny French guy while we were backpacking around Australia. He **kept us in stitches** for the whole trip from Alice Springs to Mount Isa.

WORD STORE 6F | Phrases

4 Complete the text with one word in each gap. The first letters are given.



To my mind there's nothing more anathema than a package tour. When I want to get *away* from it all, I'll aim first and foremost to get off the <sup>1</sup>**b** \_\_\_\_\_ track to avoid bumping into any other travellers. In fact, I prefer just to roll <sup>2</sup>**u** \_\_\_\_\_ somewhere completely unplanned and <sup>3</sup>**p** \_\_\_\_\_ it by ear. You don't need much money either as travelling on a <sup>4</sup>**s** \_\_\_\_\_ is certainly the best way to see the world. On organised trips you have to remember to use your time <sup>5</sup>**w** \_\_\_\_\_ to see and do all the things on your itinerary. With no place to be, however, you can simply <sup>6</sup>**t** \_\_\_\_\_ a dip in any lake or sea you come across. And you're much more likely to need to <sup>7</sup>**p** \_\_\_\_\_ yourself when you wake up every morning in a new and amazing place than when you're holed up in some all-inclusive hotel.

- 6 Jetlag can leave people in a really ratty mood. Just make sure that you do your best to **keep a civil tongue** when talking to people and try to get in a few short naps during the day.
- 7 People that travel on a shoestring often have to make deals with other travellers to keep costs down. Whatever you do, **keep your end of the bargain** and you should avoid any nasty confrontations.
- 8 My best friend from primary school emigrated to Canada when he was nine and although we haven't seen each other for over ten years, we **keep in touch** regularly.

- to remain in contact with somebody
- a to keep something or somebody away from you
- to avoid unpleasant situations
- b to do what was promised
- c to remain positive in difficult circumstances
- d to stay up to date with something
- e to stay alert and ready to react quickly
- f to cause somebody to laugh loud and hard
- g to speak politely and without rude words

8

☐

☐

☐

☐

☐

☐

☐

☐



# 6.6

## SPEAKING

### Comparing photos

1 Match the sentence beginnings and endings. Then mark each phrase as **S** for highlighting similarities or **D** for highlighting differences.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1 Not unlike photo A,                     | <input checked="" type="radio"/> A <input checked="" type="radio"/> S / D |
| 2 I can see a number of                   | <input type="radio"/> S / D   |
| 3 On the other hand, photo A              | <input type="radio"/> S / D   |
| 4 In this photo, the people look pensive, | <input type="radio"/> S / D   |
| 5 These photos                            | <input type="radio"/> S / D   |
| 6 Unlike the first image,                 | <input type="radio"/> S / D   |

- A photo B shows elderly people engaged in an activity usually associated with youngsters.
- B whereas in this photo the atmosphere is clearly more relaxed.
- C differs from the other photos in terms of its professional quality.
- D the second image conjures up feelings of nostalgia.
- E similarities between photos A and B, not least the subject matter.
- F resemble each other in that they both show rather cosmopolitan destinations.

2 Choose the correct words to complete the descriptions.

- Judging by the crowds, the photos are *each* / *both* taken during some kind of festival or public celebration.
- It is also *dissimilar* / *unlike* in that the man pictured here is clearly extremely upset about his predicament.
- These photos are also *alike* / *resemble* because they show negative impacts of tourism on the environment.
- The holidays shown are *common* / *related* in that they are only suitable for fit, active people who don't mind sleeping outdoors.
- This mode of transport is only suited to short journeys, as *compared* / *contrast* to the luxury coach shown in picture B.
- There are other *various* / *notable* differences between the two outdoor activities shown here, such as the cost of the equipment required.



3 Read the conversation between two students and choose which two photographs A–D are being compared.

- A: These photos have **various things** in **common**, such as the airport setting, of course, and the fact that they show people who are about to set off on a trip of some sort. They <sup>1</sup>**e**\_\_\_\_\_ feature two relatively young people who are presumably travelling together and they are <sup>2</sup>**b**\_\_\_\_\_ taken in modern-looking airports. <sup>3</sup>**U**\_\_\_\_\_ the **f**\_\_\_\_\_ image, the second photo shows people who appear to be travelling for business rather than pleasure, so probably colleagues. Judging by the fact that they seem to be in a hurry, I'd say they are late for their flight. With this in mind, <sup>4</sup>**a**\_\_\_\_\_ **c**\_\_\_\_\_ **d**\_\_\_\_\_ is the way the people in the photos are likely to be feeling. <sup>5</sup>**I**\_\_\_\_\_ **t**\_\_\_\_\_ **p**\_\_\_\_\_, they are probably pretty anxious, you know, concerned that they are late and beginning to think of the consequences of missing the plane, <sup>6</sup>**w**\_\_\_\_\_ here they are only just checking in and both look relaxed and presumably excited about the prospect of the trip they are going on.
- B: Yes, the people here are clearly going on a business trip of some sort. They might be going to attend a meeting, give a presentation or even to close a valuable deal. <sup>7</sup>**I**\_\_\_\_\_ **c**\_\_\_\_\_, in this photo the couple are probably going on holiday, or maybe they're students going on an exchange, or to work overseas during the holidays, or something like that.

4 Complete the photo description in Exercise 3. The first letters are given. Sometimes more than one answer is possible.



## WRITING

6.7

A report

## 1 Complete the advice with the words from the box.

each finish first (x2) one past  
penultimate second (x2) third

A report is organised similarly to a proposal, except that a report analyses a **past** or current situation and offers recommendations based on this. It may refer to the results of a survey or to an interview. <sup>1</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ paragraph, should be given a heading linked to its contents or function according to the requirements of the task. The introduction should summarise the contents of the report followed by the <sup>2</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ main body paragraph, which should set the context. The <sup>3</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ main body paragraph should introduce the <sup>4</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ point you wish to present and add supporting details if necessary. The <sup>5</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ main body paragraph should state and support a <sup>6</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ point and might be used to present some negative aspects. The <sup>7</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ paragraph is used to give <sup>8</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ or two recommendations based on the evidence that has been presented and the report should <sup>9</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ with a short conclusion.

## REMEMBER THIS

After verbs **suggest** and **propose** we never use an *object + infinitive* and after **recommend** we tend to avoid it (especially in everyday contexts) and choose a *that*-clause or an *-ing* form.

*I suggest you to avoid the ring road.* I **suggest avoiding** the ring road.

*I propose her to stay longer.* I **propose that she stays** longer.

*(I recommend him to bring cash.)* vs I **recommend bringing** cash. vs I **recommend that he brings** cash.

## 2 Put the words in order to make phrases.

to ... / report / sets / this / out

*This report sets out to ...*

1 is / aim / to ... / report / of / the / this

2 suggest / would / that ... / I

3 interviewed ... / of / those / all

4 some / only / of / part ... / those / taking

5 also / would / recommend ... / I

6 preconditions ... / given / these

## 3 Read the report and add headings from the box to each paragraph.

Conclusion Introduction Overview  
Potential Problems Recommendations  
Status as a Great Natural Wonder



## Introduction

This report <sup>1</sup>presents / sets an overview of Abisko, Sweden and <sup>2</sup>assigns / outlines why it is worthy of inclusion in the World Travel and Tourism Council's campaign to list the greatest natural wonders on each continent. The report will also <sup>3</sup>deter / identify potential problems for visitors and make recommendations.

A

Abisko is a seventy-seven-km<sup>2</sup> national park in Swedish Lapland **lauded** for its natural beauty. Situated 250 km north of the Arctic Circle, it is the ideal location from which to see the Aurora Borealis.

B

A well-known travel guide recently <sup>4</sup>conducted / addressed a survey which named the Aurora Sky Station visitor centre, Abisko, the **quintessential** viewing spot from which to experience the Northern Lights. The clear air, the almost permanently cloud-free sky and the lack of manmade light were <sup>5</sup>assigned / cited as major factors in the choice.

In addition to this <sup>6</sup>positive / principal attraction, the wider national park is ideal for those seeking outdoor adventure under the area's famous midnight sun.

C

While the <sup>7</sup>majority / minority of visitors encounter **favourable** conditions, it cannot be guaranteed that everyone will see the Aurora Borealis during their visit. As Abisko is a seventeen-hour train journey from Stockholm, it is clear that visitors need to be made <sup>8</sup>aware / obvious of this **eventuality**.

D

Those **undeterred** by the distance must prepare for **isolation** and extreme cold. I would also definitely <sup>9</sup>conduct / advocate that visitors stick to the principle of leaving nothing (including rubbish) behind them in the national park.

E

In the <sup>10</sup>short / light of Abisko's current status as the prime location from which to view what is surely one of the globe's most amazing phenomena, I have no hesitation in recommending that it is added to the ETC's list.

## 4 Choose the correct words to complete the report.

## 5 Complete the sentences with the words in bold from the model report. Use the information in brackets to help you.

Most respondents reported being **undeterred** (not put off) by the economic situation in the host country.

1 This publisher has been producing the \_\_\_\_\_ (ultimate) travel guide to Hungary for over a decade.

2 Once \_\_\_\_\_ (admired) as a design classic, The Grand Hotel now lies empty and crumbling.

3 Visitors to the volcano should be ready for every \_\_\_\_\_ (possible outcome) as the nearest town is over 400 km away.

4 While some may find the \_\_\_\_\_ (remoteness) of the islands calming, others will soon begin to miss the comforts of mainland life.

5 Beach bums will undoubtedly find the heatwave \_\_\_\_\_ (positive) but young children and old people would be well-advised to remain indoors in the afternoon.

## 6 Complete the extracts with the missing words. The first and last letters are given.

There was a **division** between the survey respondents into those who enjoyed the resort and those who found it too touristy.

1 The **p**\_\_\_\_\_e of the report is to examine how the increase in tourist numbers has affected the local economy.

2 The former were against the idea of self-catering, while the **l**\_\_\_\_\_r thought it more convenient than staying in a hotel.

3 A key issue that ought to be a **a**\_\_\_\_\_d is the erosion caused by so many footsteps on the pathways to the falls.

4 My classmates and I were **a**\_\_\_\_\_ a street corner and asked to interview as many passersby as possible.

5 The survey was **c**\_\_\_\_\_d using tablet computers rather than traditional questionnaires.

6 A **p**\_\_\_\_\_e step would be the introduction of litter bins in the area immediately surrounding the hot spring.

## REMEMBER THIS

After verbs **suggest**, **propose** and **recommend** the subjunctive can be used to make your recommendations sound more formal. The subjunctive is a special present tense which has no -s after third person singular verbs and where the same forms are used in both present and past situations.

*I suggest that she fly via Dubai or Singapore.*

*We proposed that she visit the local orphanage.*

*The travel agency recommended that he bring cash.*

The verb **to be** has a special subjunctive form.

*I recommend that he be careful on the overnight train.*

*We suggest she be given anti-malaria medicine at once.*

## SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

## 7 Read the writing task. Then follow the instructions below.

The World Travel and Tourism Council has appealed for reports as part of a campaign to promote tourism. The aim of the campaign is to establish a list of the greatest natural wonders on each continent. You have decided to submit a report recommending that a natural wonder you know or have visited is added to the list. In your report, you should give an overview of the chosen natural wonder, explain why you think it deserves to be listed and describe any potential problems visitors might encounter. You should also include some recommendations.

Before you start, follow steps 1–9 below.

- 1 Decide what you need to include in your report according to the task rubric.
- 2 Decide what your headings will be. Do they match what you need to include?
- 3 Decide which natural wonder you will focus on.
- 4 Think of the main things to include in an overview (location, environment type, etc.).
- 5 Think why the place deserves to be included in the campaign.
- 6 Think of potential problems visitors might encounter during a visit.
- 7 Decide what your recommendations will be.
- 8 Select the most important information.
- 9 Plan and write your report.

## SHOW THAT YOU'VE CHECKED

Finished? Always check your writing (especially in the exam!) Can you tick ✓ everything on this list?

In my report:

- in the introduction, I have summarised the aim of the report in my own words. ☐
- in the first main body paragraph, I have given any information needed to set the context. ☐
- in the second main body paragraph, I have stated and supported my first point. ☐
- in the third main body paragraph, I have stated and supported my second point and possibly presented some negative aspects or problems. ☐
- in the penultimate main body paragraph, I have given some recommendations based on the evidence I have presented. ☐
- I have used a reasonably formal and impersonal style. ☐
- I have checked my spelling. ☐
- I have checked my handwriting is neat enough for someone else to read. ☐



## 6.8 SELF-CHECK

## VOCABULARY

## 1 Choose the correct expression.

It was a dramatic spectacle as the boat didn't *recede* / *slacken* speed and crashed into a concrete barrier.

- 1 We were rather dismayed at having a *stony* / *stone* beach as we had been promised golden sand.
- 2 When driving through the forest in deep fog, remember to be *mindful* / *divisible* of poor visibility.
- 3 Josh was woken up at 5 a.m. by the bells *ringing* / *pinching* from nearby steeples.
- 4 As the train *fluttered* / *chugged* slowly uphill, the Fosters could admire the beauty of the countryside.
- 5 Because of *dwindling* / *forceful* financial resources the authorities are considering raising taxes.

/5

## 2 Complete the sentences with the words or phrases from the box. There are two extra words or phrases.

an eye on a-dip -beaten -box  
down on a shoestring -ridden up

The sea is really warm. Why don't we take *a dip*? We won't be able to do this after we leave the *coast*.

- 1 My parents highly disapprove of sightseeing as a tick *exercise* so they make their own itinerary every time they visit new places.
- 2 Could you keep *my bags* while I go and buy our train tickets?
- 3 Although Amanda has managed to save a lot of money, she'll travel *because* it's such a long trip and she may need it in an emergency.
- 4 Be careful while camping and remember never to light a fire near the tent because you may burn it *down*.
- 5 As soon as we saw Steve's weather *face*, we realised he must have been at sea for a long time.

/5

## 3 Complete the text with one word in each gap. The first letters are given.

I have always *passed* for an adventurous person, still every time I embark on a trip abroad, I consider the pros and cons of backpacking because I know there might be something which I will find hard *to* *g* \_\_\_\_\_. If I'm going to a foreign country, I always learn a few *h* \_\_\_\_\_ expressions to help me get by.

Travelling through different countries allows you to understand and appreciate their cultures. What's more, you can take your time to *s* \_\_\_\_\_ up the local atmosphere and gain new insights. Besides, you are free to go to local eateries and buy stuff at local markets. You're also often left alone, not chased by *o* \_\_\_\_\_ tradesmen who want to sell all their junk and don't take 'no' for an answer.

Backpacking is like rising to new challenges and for me the *b* \_\_\_\_\_ line is that it's absolutely never a waste of time or money.

/5

## GRAMMAR

## 4 Choose the correct expression.

On our safari in Africa we saw *so* / *such* an abundance of game that it felt like a dream come true.

- 1 Be careful in such high mountains because the higher you climb, *the harder* / *harder than* it is to breathe.
- 2 As they walked in deep snow, it felt that their backpacks were getting *the heaviest* / *heavier and heavier*.
- 3 The hotel dorm *where* Sally is going to stay seems to be *as* / *such* popular a place as in the past.
- 4 Being away from home for over a year, George felt homesick *than* / *rather than* excited about his new job.
- 5 We weren't *such* / *so* much surprised by the quality of the hotel as impressed by it.

/5

## 5 Complete the sentences with the words in brackets in the correct forms. Do not change the word order. Use between three and five words in each gap.

The rickshaw rode *through* *poorer and poorer* (poor/poor) parts of Calcutta.

- 1 Well, \_\_\_\_\_ (more/apprehensive/be) about travelling solo, the less likely it is you'll try it.
- 2 Promoting holidays here wasn't \_\_\_\_\_ (such/senseless/idea) I had imagined.
- 3 My parents \_\_\_\_\_ (terrify/rather/thrill) about my last adventure in Brazil.
- 4 The prices on the Riviera turned out to be \_\_\_\_\_ (high/attractive).
- 5 We realised that Cathy wasn't \_\_\_\_\_ (experience/traveller) we had thought.

/5

## 6 Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first. Do not change the words in capitals. Use between four and six words in each gap.

When you're travelling in a group, you should accept the wishes of the majority. **FIT**

When you're travelling in a group, you should *fit in with* *what(ever) most people* want to do.

- 1 I don't know who came up with the plan first, but it won't work. **WHOEVER**  
The plan won't work, \_\_\_\_\_ first.
- 2 It doesn't matter if the taxi goes very fast, we still won't get there in time. **HOWEVER**  
We won't get there in time, \_\_\_\_\_ goes.
- 3 The first guide to arrive in the morning should take the first tour of the castle. **WHICHEVER**  
The first tour of the castle \_\_\_\_\_ guide arrives first in the morning.
- 4 Finding a cheap hotel here is an incredibly hard task. **EVER**  
Finding a cheap hotel here is \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 Having haggled once in Turkey, I realise that it's very easy to get your price. **EVER**  
Having haggled once in Turkey, I realise that it's \_\_\_\_\_ your price.

Total /30

## USE OF ENGLISH

## 7 Complete the text with the correct form of the words in brackets.

## My best trip ever!

It came about quite *unexpectedly* (expect). I had thought I'd spend the summer as usual, visiting relatives in a *neighbour* (neighbour) town. As a plan, it was perfectly acceptable without being particularly thrilling – after all, I did it every year!

Then, totally out of the blue, I had the chance to join some volunteers going to work with endangered animals in Africa. Although I'm not normally *decide* (decide), I didn't have to think about it for long – it was an incredible opportunity to do something that would stay with me for ever. I made many *delight* (delight) friends, especially among the local people, who were eager to show us around their *settle* (settle) and provided us with amazing hospitality. The scenery was spectacular and it happened more than once that its beauty simply took my breath away.

One downside was the *humid* (humid), which made us feel sticky and sweaty, though on the whole it was *bear* (bear). Luckily, the lodge we stayed in was comfortable. We kept in touch with our families through Wi-Fi, though the connection was unreliable and we often couldn't get through.

Would I go again? In a heartbeat!

/6

## 8 Choose the correct answer A, B, C or D.

## Become a travel photographer

Everyone has a *camera* on their mobile phone, and imagines they take wonderful holiday photographs. Some even aspire to be professionals! But there's more to travel photography than *off* into the unknown and taking happy snaps. It can feel daunting initially, so here are some *wisdom* of wisdom to help you decide if it's a career for you.

Buy the best camera you can afford and be prepared to go off the beaten *path*. It's vital to make your pictures stand out; don't just *flow* with the flow – it's a competitive industry, and you must sell your images. Don't let them go too cheaply, though, *you* you might feel you're getting ripped *off* and give up. You should be *push*, and push yourself forward so that your work gets noticed.

Try sending shots to an image library, even though you can't *the* library accepting them as they may have similar images already.

Whatever happens, you'll get to see the world!

- |              |             |             |            |
|--------------|-------------|-------------|------------|
| (A) handy    | B helpful   | C fitted    | D floppy   |
| 1 A leaving  | B embarking | C departing | D heading  |
| 2 A ideas    | B words     | C sayings   | D thoughts |
| 3 A path     | B road      | C track     | D way      |
| 4 A go       | B get       | C put       | D pull     |
| 5 A so       | B as        | C while     | D whereas  |
| 6 A off      | B in        | C out       | D on       |
| 7 A careful  | B grateful  | C peaceful  | D forceful |
| 8 A pick out | B set up    | C bank on   | D take off |

/8

## 9 Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first. Do not change the words in capitals. Use between three and six words in each gap.

You don't have to decide now, so wait and see what happens. **PLAY**

Why don't you *play it by ear because/as/since* you don't have to decide now.

- 1 The coach driver went along the winding mountain road very carefully. **EVER**  
The coach driver went along the winding mountain road \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 It doesn't matter what route the cab driver takes, we won't make the train now. **WHATEVER**  
We won't make the train now, \_\_\_\_\_ takes.
- 3 Of all the art galleries I've been to, I found the Guggenheim Museum in New York incredibly innovative. **AS**  
I have never been to as \_\_\_\_\_ the Guggenheim Museum in New York.
- 4 Their amazement seeing the wildebeest crossing the Mara River was increasing all the time. **AMAZED**  
They were getting \_\_\_\_\_ seeing the wildebeest crossing the Mara River.
- 5 You can't have failed to notice that he is obsessed with travel. **HIS**  
You must have \_\_\_\_\_ travel.
- 6 Reading about the local customs while travelling around foreign countries be very helpful. **STEAD**  
Reading about the local customs while travelling around foreign countries \_\_\_\_\_.

/6

Total /20



# 7 Express yourself

7.1

## VOCABULARY

Theatre and musicals

- exaggerated synonyms
- theatre words
- compound adjectives

### SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

1 Complete the names of job titles. The numbers in brackets indicate the number of letters in each word.

- lead singer or musician in a choir or orchestra (7) soloist
- helps musicians record their music in a studio (2 words – 5,8) \_\_\_\_\_
- chooses actors for theatre, film and TV (2 words – 7,5) \_\_\_\_\_
- writes plays (10) \_\_\_\_\_
- uses their hands to make three-dimensional pieces of art out of clay, metal, wood, etc. (8) \_\_\_\_\_
- leads an orchestra (9) \_\_\_\_\_
- is the proprietor of a space in which art is exhibited and sold (2 words – 7,5) \_\_\_\_\_
- writes someone else's life story (10) \_\_\_\_\_
- is in charge of cameras/lights, etc. when shooting for TV or film (15) \_\_\_\_\_
- is responsible for the collections in a gallery or museum, etc. (7) \_\_\_\_\_
- writes long fictional stories (8) \_\_\_\_\_
- converts written text from one language to another (10) \_\_\_\_\_

### WORD STORE 7A | Exaggerated synonyms

2 Complete the text. Some letters are given.

#### Reviews

★★★★

The iconic English spy James Bond has been single-handedly **packing out** cinemas across the globe since 1962. During that time, audiences have **'h\_\_\_\_\_d their b\_\_\_\_\_h'** as no less than seven different

Bonds have dodged **'fl\_\_\_\_\_s'** of bullets and defeated super-villains in twenty-six films and counting. Throughout his many incarnations, Bond's **'vi\_\_\_\_\_l'** approach to espionage has led him to bend the rules as he follows his gut instincts and risks his neck to protect his beloved Britain. Despite this and other constants, rather than **'re\_\_\_\_\_e'** the dashing spy slavishly across the films, each time Bond has had a **'re\_\_\_\_\_t'**, successive actors have brought something different to Ian Fleming's original character.

Known for glamorous locations, beautiful people and **'r\_\_\_\_\_l'** stunts that leave viewers with **'g\_\_\_\_\_g'** mouths, the film franchise looks set to continue for many instalments to

come. The **'sh\_\_\_\_\_r se\_\_\_\_\_e'** of occasion that **'sw\_\_\_\_\_s ar\_\_\_\_\_d'** the opening of a new Bond film means even global news channels report premieres as headline news, an accolade achieved by only a handful of films in recent years.



### WORD STORE 7B | Theatre words

3 Match the words from the box to the definitions. There is one extra word.

aisle choral melodic percussive  
props rhythmic stage stilts

- of or relating to a choir or chorus choral
- the part of a theatre on which the actors perform \_\_\_\_\_
- pleasant to listen to \_\_\_\_\_
- leg extenders worn by performers \_\_\_\_\_
- relating to percussion instruments such as drums \_\_\_\_\_
- articles other than costumes and scenery used by actors during a performance \_\_\_\_\_
- with a steady beat or pulse \_\_\_\_\_

4 Use the words from Exercise 3 to complete the sentences.

- Percussive instruments include the triangle, tambourine, bongo drums, symbols and many, many others.
- Heather is taking a circus skills course because she wants to learn how to juggle and walk on \_\_\_\_\_.
  - The star of the show fell off the \_\_\_\_\_ during one of the dance scenes and sprained her ankle.
  - My grandfather has a deep, \_\_\_\_\_ voice that makes everything he says sound like a beautiful song.
  - The \_\_\_\_\_ and repetitive sounds of Sheffield's steelworks provided the inspiration for the beats on LFO's early dance records.
  - The only time I ever listen to \_\_\_\_\_ music is when we listen to songs sung by the national choir on the TV.
  - One of the most recognisable \_\_\_\_\_ in theatre is the skull of Yorick, the dead jester that Hamlet talks to in the famous graveyard scene.

### WORD STORE 7C | Compound adjectives

5 Combine the correct forms of words from boxes A and B to form compound adjectives. Then complete the sentences.

A (ill heart long far slack high)

B (gross jaw judge reach run stop)

Sarah's decision to dress up as a recently disgraced celebrity was considered ill-judged by most of the other guests at the fancy dress party.

- The consequences of his outrageous behaviour at the awards ceremony will be \_\_\_\_\_ in terms of his image as a wholesome kids movie actor.
- We went to the cinema hoping for a \_\_\_\_\_ action movie and what we got was an overly sentimental love story with a couple of car chases.
- The Simpsons* and *Grey's Anatomy* are examples of \_\_\_\_\_ animated series, having managed thirty-one and sixteen series respectively.
- At the time of writing, the \_\_\_\_\_ movie shot in 3D is *Star Wars: The Force Awakens*, which earned a staggering 936.66 million U.S. dollars at the box office.
- When Sofia Coppola walked into the restaurant, all the other diners stopped eating and stared \_\_\_\_\_ at the famous director.



### WORD STORE 7D | EXTRA Compound adjectives

6 Complete the extracts from reviews. Use the information in brackets to help you.

Watch the hilarity unfold as Carrey's well-meaning (having good intentions) but incredibly unlucky zoo-keeper attempts to release all the animals from London zoo.

Tight- (mean with money) Scrooge is portrayed wonderfully by Murray who gives another of his fine low-key performances.

Cumberbatch is convincing as the quick- (clever) Holmes and Freeman equally so as his trusty sidekick, Dr Watson.

### SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

7 Choose the best answer A–C to complete the sentences.

- The \_\_\_\_\_ nature of the portrait exhibition left some visitors in tears and others overwhelmed with joy.  
A sheer B visceral C gaping
- Viewers are warned not to try to \_\_\_\_\_ these dangerous stunts at home.  
A replicate B reboot C hold
- There was a \_\_\_\_\_ of activity backstage as the entire cast underwent a costume change.  
A breath B flurry C sense
- Unrecognisable after \_\_\_\_\_ cosmetic surgery, the former leading man's acting career appears to be all but over.  
A radical B packing C swirling
- As well as designing the costumes, Florian also organised the many different \_\_\_\_\_ needed for this production.  
A stilts B stages C props
- The famous drummer's influence has led the band to adopt a more \_\_\_\_\_ style for their second album.  
A choral B rhythmic C melodic
- The \_\_\_\_\_ sequel to this classic romantic comedy left fans of the original bitterly disappointed.  
A ill-judged B far-reaching C highest-grossing
- If producers imagined this first series would lead to a \_\_\_\_\_ favourite to rival the ten seasons of *Friends*, then they were sadly mistaken.  
A well-meaning B heart-stopping C long-running
- The star-studded audience was left \_\_\_\_\_ when a naked man ran onto the stage at the prestigious awards ceremony.  
A action-packed B slack-jawed C tight-fisted
- The \_\_\_\_\_ script is full of clever observations on teenage life and the stars' performances are entirely convincing.  
A far-fetched B mind-blowing C quick-witted

/10

The mind- (overwhelmingly impressive) cinematography of *Sicario* peaks with the stunning aerial shots of the US-Mexican border.

What could have been a serious examination of the downsides to the development of artificial intelligence, descends disappointingly into a far- (difficult to believe), half-hearted and superficial action movie.

This dialogue-driven period drama is about as far from action- (filled with exciting events) as it is possible to get, and yet it is almost impossible to take your eyes off the screen.



## READING

7.2

Lorde • adjectives • phrases • collocations

1 Read the article. Which section of a newspaper would you **least** expect it to appear in?

- 1 Arts and entertainment
- 2 Teenage matters
- 3 Home and family
- 4 Women's supplement



Lorde is many things. Real name Ella Yelich-O'Connor, she's a chart phenomenon who has sold millions of records around the world, a double Grammy-winner, Best International Female Artist at 2014's Brit Awards, and a Billboard chart-topper with her second album, *Melodrama*. On her eighteenth birthday, fellow star Taylor Swift wrote on her Instagram account: 'It's Ella's eighteenth birthday technically but we all know she's really 300 and knows all the secrets of the universe', which does much to capture O'Connor's maturity and wisdom. As is evident in her anti-consumerist lyrics, feminist messaging and thoughtful electronic balladry, Lorde is also entirely her own person, which is no mean feat in a contemporary pop world of pasteurised homogeneity. On the wintry afternoon that we meet, her familiar gothic tumble of hair is scraped and tied back, and she's pale and make-up free, with no attempt to hide the acne troubling her cheeks.

As we settle into her room at a boutique hotel in east London, her mother exiled\* to the lobby downstairs, I ask her what she's wearing and her reply is cheerfully vague: 'Some, like, trousers, some boots ... My jumper? I think it's from New Zealand,' she says, referring to her home country. 'I cut the labels out of everything – they scratch me.' Lorde's circumspection\* about designer brands, red carpets and celebrity culture was there from the outset, and is articulated in her worldwide smash hit *Royals*. The lyrics spoke to an audience, young and old, hungry for something more real in mainstream music, and when the song brought her some of the trappings she had dismissed in it, it only served to stiffen her resolve.

'I'd just turned sixteen, and people wanted me to do red carpets and I was, like, "I'm still getting used to how I look and I'm still growing." And I don't want to just feel sad because someone said, "Ooh, she's on the worst-dressed list!" So I thought, "I don't have to do this if I don't want to." The power to say no is not one that many up-and-coming artists seem to possess, and on occasion Lorde has been told, "Everyone else does it, so why wouldn't you?" But she has stood her ground. A lot of my audience, they're younger than me or the same age, and a lot of the decisions I make are about trying to portray this whole weird fame-storm that's



partnered her with Joel Little, an established musician twice her age, to help develop her compositional skills. Soon her poetry and short stories gave way to lyrics. She wrote about herself, her peers and their suburb, and the suburb beyond it. The claustrophobic bubble of New Zealand was both a stone in her shoe and her inspiration. O'Connor's sound is simple yet cinematic, spinning tales of real teenage dreams – penniless but happy nights out full of longing and loneliness – that reject clichés of mindless fun and hedonistic decadence.

'From the outset, I have written about and for my peers and friends. It is a unifying thing, a call to arms,' she says. 'You never hear people making generalisations about adults, yet everyone will make them about teenagers. People forget that we are human beings and that we think differently from each other.' Her thoughtful take on teenage life is a million miles from the histrionic show-off, criticism-drawing tactics of some other teenage singers.

O'Connor is a self-professed\* feminist who has attacked the pernicious effect of Photoshop culture on young girls' self-esteem, but she insists that she isn't purposefully setting herself up against any particular stars. 'That is definitely an older person's reaction to my songs,' she says.

If teenage stardom can seem like a guaranteed ticket to adult excess, O'Connor, with her concerned mother waiting outside our interview, possesses a maturity that is, for now, inoculating\* her from the madness growing around her. 'What I am doing now, I am learning so much that I couldn't learn at any university at any age,' she says. 'Every time I get on stage I learn something new. I'm evolving all the time. My next record could sound completely different.'

happening to me as realistically as possible.' Ella Marija Lani Yelich-O'Connor has always been a teenager of a different stripe. She grew up in a nice beachside suburb of Auckland, the second of four children. Her mother, a poet, and her father, a civil engineer, created a home environment that was cultured and inquiring, and Ella was a voracious and precocious reader. Aged thirteen, she signed a record company development deal after a label executive saw a video of her singing Duffy's *Warwick Avenue* at school talent show. But her goal wasn't to be a singer – she wanted to write, so the label

2 Read the article again. For questions 1–6, choose the best answer A–D.

- 1 In the first paragraph, the author mentions modern pop music's 'pasteurised homogeneity' in order to emphasise
  - A Lorde's enthusiasm compared to her contemporaries.
  - B the non-typical nature of Lorde's lyrics.
  - C the difference between Lorde and Taylor Swift's musical styles.
  - D how much of Lorde's character is that of a normal teen.
- 2 According to Lorde, what motivates her rejection of the trappings of fame?
  - A Insecurities about her appearance
  - B A dislike of mainstream popular music culture
  - C Wanting to portray herself\* different to other celebrities
  - D A desire to communicate the realities of her fame to her fans
- 3 In the third paragraph, what is implied about most young musicians?
  - A They are naive about the pressures that come with fame.
  - B They agree to most things in their quest for success.
  - C They are uncomfortable with their public image.
  - D They strive to stand out from the crowd in any way possible.
- 4 In the fourth paragraph, it is suggested that while growing up, Lorde found New Zealand
  - A limiting yet influential in her compositions.
  - B conducive to academic study.
  - C too expensive to allow for having fun.
  - D old-fashioned in its approach to culture.
- 5 When Lorde refers to her music as a 'call to arms', she implies that she hopes it will
  - A encourage her fans to support feminism.
  - B prompt teenagers to rebel against their parents.
  - C inspire teenagers to emphasise their individuality.
  - D create a backlash against egotistical performers.
- 6 The writer concludes that Lorde's attitude to fame and success
  - A may lead to excessive behaviour in later life.
  - B could influence the sound of her next album.
  - C provides protection from potential pitfalls.
  - D causes her parent's concern.

3 Match the adjectives in bold in the text to the definitions.

- |                   |  |
|-------------------|--|
| <b>pernicious</b> | – hurtful, harmful or deadly   |
| 1 _____           | – engaging in an activity with great enthusiasm                                  |
| 2 _____           | – having certain advanced abilities for one's age                                |
| 3 _____           | – excessively dramatic or showy  |
| 4 _____           | – doing well at a career or occupation and likely to be successful in the future |

4 Complete the sentences with the phrases from the box. Use the text and the information in brackets to help you.

from the outset   no mean feat  
stand your ground   stiffen his resolve  
stone in my shoe   the trappings of fame

Reality TV star Lorna is enjoying **the trappings of fame** (material items that signal success), judging by her latest shopping excursion to Rodeo Drive.

- 1 My height, or lack of it, has always been a \_\_\_\_\_ (an annoyance or disadvantage) when it comes to convincing casting agents to hire me.
- 2 Katharine Hepburn won the Oscar for best actress four times, which is \_\_\_\_\_ (a great achievement).
- 3 I felt \_\_\_\_\_ (since the beginning) that this book was going to be too difficult and after 100 pages I see I was right.
- 4 Don't let them underpay you. \_\_\_\_\_ (don't give in) and show them how valuable you are.
- 5 Rejections only served to \_\_\_\_\_ and eventually his novel was published to great acclaim.

## WORD STORE 7E | Collocations

5 Match the words from boxes A and B to complete the collocations in the sentences. Use the definitions in brackets to help you.

A { immortal epic full-length  
raw time-worn warring }

B { dress materials prejudices  
proportions tribes words }

I know you wanted to go first, Danny, but it's Flora's turn, and in the **immortal words** (special, famous and likely to be used for a long time) of the Rolling Stones, 'You can't always get what you want'.

- 1 It's time to put away \_\_\_\_\_ (outdated biases) and acknowledge we are all equal regardless of race, gender or lifestyle choices.
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_ (ethnic groups engaged in fighting) in the south agree to cease hostilities in exchange for land deal.
- 3 The country is rich in \_\_\_\_\_, especially minerals, yet almost none of the money generated makes it back to the general population.
- 4 Johansson looked stunning with her new haircut and a gorgeous \_\_\_\_\_ (an item of women's clothing, often formal) in emerald green by Versace.
- 5 With the main run stretching for nearly a kilometre, this is an indoor ski slope of \_\_\_\_\_ (huge in size or importance).

## GLOSSARY

**exiled** (adj) – separated from country, home, etc.  
**circumspection** (n) – caution, wariness

**self-professed** (adj) – acknowledged by oneself  
**inoculate** (v) – protect, *literally* vaccinate



7.3

GRAMMAR

Advanced conditionals

SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

1 Read the story about Andy. Then transform the text using conditional sentences. Write in brackets which conditional type each sentence is.

Andy Fields is an art enthusiast who frequents car boot sales in search of real bargains.

If Andy Fields <sup>a</sup>wasn't/weren't (be) an art enthusiast, he <sup>b</sup>wouldn't frequent (frequent) car boot sales in search of real bargains. <sup>c</sup>(2nd)

1 He went to a jumble sale in Las Vegas a few years ago and bought several paintings for \$5.

If he <sup>a</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (go) to a jumble sale a few years ago, he <sup>b</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (buy) several paintings for \$5. <sup>c</sup>(\_\_\_\_\_)

2 Mr Fields was convinced one of them was the work of Andy Warhol, so he showed it to an expert from a famous auction house.

If Mr Fields <sup>a</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (be) convinced one of them was the work of Andy Warhol, he <sup>b</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (show) it to an expert from a famous auction house. <sup>c</sup>(\_\_\_\_\_)

3 The expert believes the piece may be original so Mr Fields has put it up for auction on eBay with a starting bid of £1.25 million.

If the expert <sup>a</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (believe) the piece may be original, Mr Fields <sup>b</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (put it up) for auction on eBay with a starting bid of £1.25 million. <sup>c</sup>(\_\_\_\_\_)

4 He is confident the artwork can fetch much more than the asking price and is waiting for serious offers.

If he <sup>a</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (be) confident the artwork can fetch much more than the asking price, he <sup>b</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (wait) for serious offers. <sup>c</sup>(\_\_\_\_\_)

5 He may be lucky and see a great return on his investment.

If he <sup>a</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (be) lucky, he <sup>b</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (see) a great return on his investment. <sup>c</sup>(\_\_\_\_\_)

2 ★ Comment on the situations using conditional sentences and beginning with the words given.

You accepted their offer, but I would have advised you against it.

Were I you, I wouldn't have accepted their offer.

1 Joe wasn't careful, so he invested his money in shares.

Had <sup>a</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ more careful, he <sup>b</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ his money in shares.

2 It's possible that our plan falls through and perhaps we will face bankruptcy.

Should <sup>a</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ through, we <sup>b</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ face bankruptcy.

3 The band signed the sponsorship deal without consulting a lawyer and they're in trouble now.

Had <sup>a</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ the sponsorship deal without consulting a lawyer, they <sup>b</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ in trouble now.

4 Dylan's track record is not good enough, so he may not get the grant.

Were <sup>a</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ better, he <sup>b</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ the grant.

3 ★★ Replace the phrases in bold with the appropriate phrases from the box.

but for   in the event of   otherwise   say   ~~providing~~  
that   what if   whether or not   unless I

A: Hey Nick, I've discovered a new way of raising money for your exhibition **on condition that** / providing that you're still looking for support.

N: Of course I am! **1If I don't** / \_\_\_\_\_ get it soon, I'll miss my chance to put on a display. So what is it?

A: It's called crowd funding. Well, **2imagine** / \_\_\_\_\_ you want to raise capital for your project. First you should choose a platform that provides crowd funding services. You then advertise your project, set the deadline and a minimum funding goal and the rest is up to the people who pledge how much money they are willing to donate. **3If it hadn't been for** / \_\_\_\_\_ their donations, many projects wouldn't have come through.

N: But why would anyone want to back me up financially?

A: Usually those who seek help offer some kind of reward.

N: I see, and **4suppose** / \_\_\_\_\_ I fail to collect the sum I have set?

A: That depends on the platform you sign in with, really. Some of them won't give you any money **5in case of** / \_\_\_\_\_ failure to meet the goal, others will transfer the resources **6even if** / \_\_\_\_\_ you miss the target.

N: I think it's worth a try. **7If I don't** / \_\_\_\_\_, I'll never know.

4 ★★★ Use the words in brackets to complete the sentences. Add any other words if necessary.

We will help finance the campaign on condition that Sophie takes on the responsibility of Project Leader. (condition)

1 Don't worry! Your father and I will stand by you \_\_\_\_\_ being admitted to the college of your choice. (event)

2 We won't get mad with Mark \_\_\_\_\_ promises to do his share of the housework. (long)

3 \_\_\_\_\_ ask the boss for a day off, do you think she would let me take one? (were)

SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

5 Choose the correct answer.

1 *Should* / If our company goes bust, guess who's going to be held responsible?

2 We'll give you our financial backing *supposing* / *provided* you show us a feasible business plan.

3 Our charity is bound to help the needy *as long as* / *whether or not* no new law is passed.

4 If that test was as easy as you say, he *should* / *might* have passed it a long time ago.

5 *Were* / *Would* I to take part in the fundraising, you'd have to keep me company.

6 We might never have collected enough funds *providing* / *but for* his hefty contribution.

/6



# 7.4

## USE OF ENGLISH

### Phrases with *if*

#### 1 Choose the correct meaning of the underlined phrases.

- They say that Bruce Springsteen seldom does interviews and is rarely, if ever, troubled by paparazzi.  
A if only                      B if at all
- Taking photos of toddlers isn't a piece of cake. If anything, it may turn out to be quite tricky.  
A If I'm not mistaken      B On the contrary
- A: Daisy, could you stand right next to Frank and say 'cheese'?  
B: As if!  
A You wish!                      B With pleasure!
- Tell me whether you have any useful tips for me, and if so, I need to make a note of them.  
A if necessary                      B if yes
- When I was taking that photo, her feelings for him, if any, weren't clear.  
A providing there were any    B whether or not



#### 2 Put the verbs in brackets in the correct tenses.

- They stared at me as if they knew (know) me.
- Look at this photo of a model! She looks as if she \_\_\_\_\_ (not/sleep) for a year!
  - Whenever I hear people speaking Greek, they sound as though they \_\_\_\_\_ (speak) Spanish.
  - Ethan, Joshua, look at you! You look as if you \_\_\_\_\_ (just/have) a fight. Who started it this time?
  - After the agility competition, her dog breathed as though it \_\_\_\_\_ (run) in a marathon.
  - I don't know how to break this to Freddie, but during his presentation yesterday he sweated as if it \_\_\_\_\_ (be) his first public appearance.
  - Every time I come back home from a long journey, I feel as though I \_\_\_\_\_ (be) where I belong.

#### 3 Complete the instructions with the phrases from the box. There are three extra phrases.

as if    if any    if anything    even if  
if in doubt    if necessary    if not    if so

### Top Tips For Taking Great Photos

Are you the owner of a single-lens reflex camera or a simple point-and-shoot camera? If so, here are some ways to help you take a memorable snap:

#### 1 Watch the light

It is a rookie mistake to assume that flash is to be used only when it's dark or when you're inside a room. Any good photographer will tell you that prior to taking a photo, you need to know the light source. It may turn out that your subject's face is unevenly lit by the sun so, <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_, you might need to switch on flash even in daylight to dispose of any imperfections.

#### 2 Get close

Before pressing the shutter button, zoom in or take a step or two towards your subject. <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_, you will miss out on all the interesting details such as freckles, smiles or telling gazes. However, if you get too close to them (<sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_, see the manual), it will result in blurry photographs.

#### 3 Composition is everything

It's not recommended to place your subject in the middle of the picture but to move it away to either side. Before recomposing the picture, however, don't forget to lock the focus on the subject by pressing and holding the shutter button halfway down. Why? Because <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ you own an auto-focus camera, most of them focus only on the subject that is in the centre of the viewfinder.

### SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

#### 4 Complete the text with one word in each gap.

### THE DANGERS OF TAKING A SELFIE

'How can selfies be dangerous?', you might ask. If in doubt as to the origins of the name, let's just take a quick look at some statistics. A few years ago, a group of seven Indian men drowned after their boat capsized. They thought that standing on one side of the boat would make a nice selfie. If <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_, it led to their untimely demise. A Spanish citizen, aged seventeen, lost his life when he tried to take a photo of himself during the running of the bulls festival. <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ if we make allowances for his young age, he should have known better. Two Russian men had a really outlandish idea of taking a photo with a hand grenade after removing the pin. Seldom, <sup>3</sup> if \_\_\_\_\_, do such stories end well. Needless to say, this one didn't. In the following months the death toll continued and, if <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_, you can find the remaining data on our website. It seems that those people have lost their survival instinct and they behaved as if they <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ indestructible. So next time you decide to take a selfie, use your common sense. If <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_, it may cost your life.





# LISTENING LANGUAGE PRACTICE

Word building • informal expressions  
• collocations

## 1 Complete the conversation between a man and a woman. Put the words in brackets into the correct form.

Extract from Student's Book recording 3.8

- W3:** So it looks like the decision was to keep the skateboarding park and not do the development (develop). That was quick!
- M3:** I could see it coming. The skateboarders generated lots of <sup>1</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (public) – they used social media to whip up a real wave of support. They made a big thing about their own rights and what a <sup>2</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (history) place the skateboarding park was but they didn't consider the benefits of the <sup>3</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (develop) for musicians like us who play in the concert halls – or anyone else for that matter. I guess they were too focused on their own <sup>4</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (feel).
- W3:** Most people didn't understand the <sup>5</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (complex) of the projects that were included in the plans – the new <sup>6</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (rehearse) studios that would have attracted new audiences for us, the pop-up shops that might have been run by young entrepreneurs – it could offer genuine local <sup>7</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (generate) on all fronts, like a real <sup>8</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (create) hub. But that was <sup>9</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (down) by the people involved, which meant it became a real missed opportunity.
- M3:** The studios would have been good for us and offered local kids a dedicated space where they could develop an interest in culture. The developers just didn't <sup>10</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (light) that enough.
- W3:** It's definitely a case of people not getting the message.

## 2 Complete the sentences with the underlined expressions from the text. Use the information in brackets to help you. Sometimes you need to change the form.

If only I'd known that there was an Andy Warhol exhibition in town. That was a real missed opportunity. (not take advantage of a situation)

- The local newspaper today is reporting a \_\_\_\_\_ for the idea of building an amphitheatre in the park. There's talk of putting on not only plays but concerts too and most people seem to be in favour of the idea. (a sudden increase in favour of an idea)
- Resistance to erecting the new statue is mounting \_\_\_\_\_. Local residents, shop owners and the media are against the idea. (from many different angles)
- They knocked down the old football stadium with public consultation and, like most people, I just didn't \_\_\_\_\_. What a shame! (predict an outcome)
- We told Mia a hundred times that parkour was dangerous, but she never seemed \_\_\_\_\_. Still, it's only a broken wrist so I guess she'll recover soon. (understand something that is said or implied)
- I won't sit through three hours of Verdi – or any other opera \_\_\_\_\_. It's just not my thing! (to indicate the equal relevance of a second topic)

## 3 Complete the phrases and phrasal verbs with the words from the box. Use a dictionary if necessary.

( call hot pan rid whip )

- hot up – become more lively
- \_\_\_\_\_ up – encourage
  - \_\_\_\_\_ out – develop or evolve
  - too close to \_\_\_\_\_ – impossible to predict
  - get \_\_\_\_\_ of – become free of something or somebody

## 4 Complete the text with the appropriate phrases from Exercise 3. Sometimes you need to change the form.

The finale for the Amateur Band of the Year is really hotting up with votes coming in thick and fast from all over the country and at this early stage we really have no idea how things will <sup>1</sup>\_\_\_\_\_. A lot of interest has been <sup>2</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ over the last few days thanks to media's speculation who will win this year's coveted prize. Figures so far show that the result is still <sup>3</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ with The Blues Oranges and The Urangabangs pulling away from the other groups with 33 and 34 percent respectively. Wait a minute! News just in! The Urangabangs have decided to <sup>4</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ their drummer! Will this affect the voting?

## WORD STORE 7F | Collocations

## 5 Combine the words from boxes A and B to complete the sentences with the most likely collocations.

- A ( creative cultural done legal local pop-up property public redevelopment )
- B ( battles consultation deal developers hub institutions plans shops regeneration )

Technology companies are constantly involved in legal battles over copyright infringements.

- Property prices are on the up thanks to \_\_\_\_\_ of the area.
- The community centre on the corner is becoming a real \_\_\_\_\_ for musicians and artists owing to the work of local NGOs.
- \_\_\_\_\_ are making fortunes nowadays by renovating and selling old buildings.
- I can't believe there's another row of \_\_\_\_\_ on the high street. All they sell is cheap junk.
- The \_\_\_\_\_ for the stadium have been put on hold because of the change of government.
- There's no point in protesting to the selling of the park – it's a \_\_\_\_\_ I hear.
- There was a \_\_\_\_\_ and it seems most people are in favour of a new concert hall.
- Certain \_\_\_\_\_ like theatres and opera houses may not seem so popular, but they play an essential role in the field of the arts.



7.6

SPEAKING

Discussing advantages and disadvantages

1 Put the words in order to make phrases. Then mark each phrase as **A** for presenting advantages, **D** for presenting disadvantages, or **R** for reaching a decision.

- Cons ... / pros / and / up / the weighing  
Weighing up the pros and cons ... ☒
- 1 I / idea / see / one / with / difficulty / that / is ... ☐
- 2 account ... / needs / into / everybody's / taking ☐
- 3 in / of ... / could / be / that / favour / argument / an ☐
- 4 idea, / namely ... / against / argument / a / strong / there's / that ☐
- 5 you / the / aspects ... / consider / if / negative / positive / and / all ☐
- 6 main / of / the / one / benefits / of ... ☐

2 Complete the dialogues with the missing phrases.

- 1 **Dionne:** Weighing up the pros and cons, I'd say watching a recording of a play in a cinema is better than not seeing it at all.  
**Frederic:** I agree. <sup>1</sup>O\_\_\_\_\_ of the m\_\_\_\_\_ b\_\_\_\_\_ is that you get to see close-ups of the actors' faces that you wouldn't see in a theatre.
- 2 **Karen:** I'd like to propose that, instead of a play, this year the school holds a disco.  
**Phillip:** <sup>2</sup>O\_\_\_\_\_ d\_\_\_\_\_ I see with that is that it isn't really educational, is it?  
**Karen:** That could be an <sup>3</sup>a\_\_\_\_\_ in f\_\_\_\_\_ of it though, couldn't it? The kids have worked hard all year. Maybe they deserve something that is for no other reason than fun.
- 3 **Jack:** I'd like to see music being taught in all schools as a standard part of the curriculum.  
**Helen:** There's a <sup>4</sup>s\_\_\_\_\_ a\_\_\_\_\_ a\_\_\_\_\_ that idea – namely the cost of the equipment required.



3 Complete the dialogue with the words from the box. There are two extra words.

account advantages balance  
bearing drawback major negative  
plus point selling support things

- K:** Lionel, look at this! The city council's going to invest in converting the unused building in the city centre into something useful. There's a range of proposals here on their site. You can vote for the ones you'd like to have.  
**L:** Can you send me the link, Katy?  
**K:** Sure ...  
**L:** OK, let's see ... public gymnasium and pool – yep, cool, theatre and dance studio – er ... nope. Indoor market? Er ... well ...  
**K:** Wait – theatre and dance studio? That could be fantastic! It could be used for plays and also concerts – get local bands up there on the stage, you know? That's a huge point in support of that one, I reckon. You're a big music fan, right?  
**L:** Well, yes, but a <sup>1</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ downside is that it would probably sit empty most of the time between performances, don't you think?  
**K:** Not necessarily. It could be used for dance or music lessons, or drama classes. I think the fact that it's something educational is a strong <sup>2</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ point.  
**L:** Maybe, but having a gym and pool in the city centre would be a real <sup>3</sup>\_\_\_\_\_, wouldn't it? The gym at school is rubbish and it's so far to the uni pool.  
**K:** I guess a pool might be OK, but there is one at the university already and there are gyms everywhere. I see that as a <sup>4</sup>\_\_\_\_\_. Not much point in voting for something we've already got.  
**L:** I guess that is somewhat of a <sup>5</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ aspect.  
**K:** What about the indoor market?  
**L:** Hmm. Not very exciting, is it? Plus, all <sup>6</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ considered, there are enough shops in the city centre already, aren't there?  
**K:** Well, yes, but if it was used to sell locally grown food, an argument in <sup>7</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ of it could be that it might actually make it easier for people to eat a bit more healthily.  
**L:** I suppose so, though there are plenty of places to buy fruit and vegetables, for those who can be bothered to cook.  
**K:** True. On <sup>8</sup>\_\_\_\_\_, I'd say the theatre and dance studio wins it. I'm going to vote for that.  
**L:** I guess you're right. <sup>9</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ everything in mind, that's probably the best choice on the list. When will the winning project be announced?  
**K:** 17 November, it says here.  
**L:** OK, fingers crossed then.



## WRITING

7.7

A review of a book/film

- 1 Mark the advice according to the paragraph it most likely relates to: introduction I, main body paragraphs M and conclusion C.

State your overall impression.

C

- 1 Give a detailed evaluation. It may be positive, negative or balanced. ☐
- 2 If reviewing two things (e.g. book and its film adaptation), start the comparison you will continue throughout the review. ☐
- 3 Describe the plot briefly (the main aim is evaluation). ☐
- 4 Express a recommendation with reasons. ☐
- 5 Catch the reader's attention and indicate the aim and structure of your review. ☐

- 2 Match the sentences or sentence halves to form extracts from reviews.

Whereas the book contains scenes of violence,

G

- 1 Compare this weak sequel to the first film in the series, ☐
- 2 Set in India, the book tells the story of twins Ama and Apu ☐
- 3 The first chapter sets the scene and begins with ☐
- 4 A possible criticism is that the sub-plot involving the main character's sisters ☐
- 5 Not everyone will enjoy the lengthy descriptions of the characters' outfits. ☐
- 6 If you like fast-paced, laugh-out-loud, gross-out humour, ☐
- A Even so, there is just enough action to hold the attention of those with no interest in fashion. ☐
- B adds little of interest to the ongoing narrative. ☐
- C and their childhood on the streets of Mumbai. ☐
- D then you have to see Jim Carrey's run of whacky 1990s comedies. ☐
- E one of the most memorable opening lines in contemporary fiction. ☐
- F which is a classic by anyone's standards. ☐
- G the film has been censored to make it suitable for younger audiences. ☐

- 3 Read the article containing a review and number the paragraphs in the correct order.

- 4 Complete the article with the correct forms of the words from the box. There are two extra words.

adapt admit can can't criticise however  
portray profound protagonist story struggle

## An Amazing Race for Glory: Ford v Ferrari

- ☐ A The entire film is centred around the two men's collaboration and their *struggles* against corporate interference – the head of Ford wanted to remove Miles from the project – and the laws of physics. While most of the film focuses on car design and racing, elements of personal relations and parenthood are brought in to broaden the film's appeal. <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_, the real interest lies in how <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ focused the two main characters are on achieving their vision, and what it costs them to reach it.
- ☐ B All in all, I <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ recommend this film to anyone who is interested in cars, engineering, the sixties, or extremely good acting and solid film-making. What I <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ avoid pointing out is the lack of strong female characters, which – while probably true to the 1960s setting and the car-centric subject matter – seemed to me a flaw in an otherwise praiseworthy film.
- ☐ C When the Ford Motor Company decided to challenge carmaker Ferrari by attempting to build a race car that was sleeker and faster than anything made by the Italian firm, very few car-savvy people thought it possible. <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ from a non-fiction book about the famous 1966 '24 Hours of Le Mans' race, *Ford v Ferrari* retells the history of the two main <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ who led this remarkable mission. Carroll Shelby, the visionary American car designer, is <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ by Matt Damon, while Christian Bale plays the British driver Ken Miles, famous for his driving skills and fearlessness.
- ☐ D <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_, the script plays fast and loose with some of the facts as presented in the book, but real-life events don't always create drama on the big screen, so it's hard to fault writers who have managed to create a gripping drama while staying true to most of the actual history.

★★★★☆



- 5 Replace the adjectives in bold with *very* where possible.

Both the novel and the film are **really** / *very* inspiring for anyone with an interest in snow sports.

- 1 The final scene is **utterly** / \_\_\_\_\_ ridiculous and spoils what was otherwise a worthy adaptation.
- 2 The main character is **deeply** / \_\_\_\_\_ disturbed and makes a string of appalling decisions which eventually lead to his downfall.
- 3 As the loving owner of two dogs, I found certain scenes **extremely** / \_\_\_\_\_ difficult to watch.
- 4 Ultimately, the fate of the main character is **truly** / \_\_\_\_\_ heart-breaking and leaves the reader feeling lucky to be alive.

- 6 Choose the correct adjectives to complete the extracts from reviews.

- 1 The costumes and the special effects were *absolutely* / *very* amazing considering the budget limitations.
- 2 While undoubtedly engrossing, there is no denying the story is *profoundly* / *refreshingly* upsetting.
- 3 In comparison with the film version and all its omissions and flaws, the novel is *rather* / *totally* perfect.
- 4 As expected, the latest offering from everyone's favourite animation studio is *painfully* / *vastly* entertaining.
- 5 Whereas the life-affirming novel never ceases to delight, the TV series is *highly* / *surprisingly* dull.
- 6 Exercise caution before curling up under the covers with this novel, as it is, by any standards, *extremely* / *very* terrifying.
- 7 Comic fanboys and cosplay enthusiasts will undoubtedly find the film *tediously* / *totally* enthralling, but frankly, I struggled to stay awake past the half-hour mark.

## REMEMBER THIS

**Very** can be used as an intensifier in the structure **definite article/possessive pronoun + very + noun**. It emphasises the significance, appropriateness or relevance of the noun in a particular context.

**The very idea** that this book could ever be turned into a film has seemed preposterous until now.

**His very name** conjures glamour, danger and intrigue.

- 7 Tick the sentences where **quite** means **extremely**.

From the very first page to the very last, Saunders' short story collection is quite delightful. ☒

- 1 Without wishing to include a spoiler, I can report the twist at the end of Herman's novel is quite surprising. ☐
- 2 There are so many thrills and spills along the way that by the end of the film, the viewer is quite exhausted. ☐
- 3 The main problem is with the plot, which is so absurd as to be quite unbelievable. ☐
- 4 After constructing my own image of the hero while reading the novel, I found it quite distracting that such a famous face was cast in the role. ☐

## SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

- 8 Read the writing task. Then follow the instructions below.

Your school website has introduced a 'review' section. Write a review of a book or film you have read or watched for the section. You may compare more than one title or, for example, a book and its adaptation for the screen. You should describe the plot briefly, give a detailed evaluation and make a recommendation to the reader.

Follow steps 1–8 below.

- Decide on the topic of your review – a book, a film, a book and film adaptation, a film and its sequel/remake.
- Briefly note down a plot summary.
- Note down positive and negative points about the item(s) you have chosen to review.
- If reviewing two things, make notes on how they compare.
- Decide what your recommendation(s) will be.
- Select the most important information.
- Plan and write your review.
- Add a suitable title.

## SHOW THAT YOU'VE CHECKED

Finished? Always check your writing (especially in the exam!) Can you tick ✓ everything on this list?

In my review of a book/film:

- in the introduction, I have ☐
- caught the reader's attention in the opening sentences. ☐
- indicated the aim and structure of my review. ☐
- (if reviewing two things) begun the comparison that will continue throughout the review. ☐
- in the main body paragraphs, I have ☐
- described the plot briefly. ☐
- given a detailed evaluation mentioning positives, negatives, or both. ☐
- in the conclusion I have ☐
- stated my overall impressions. ☐
- expressed a recommendation (for or against) and given reasons. ☐
- I have used a reasonably formal and impersonal style. ☐
- I have checked my spelling. ☐
- I have checked my handwriting is neat enough for someone else to read. ☐



## 7.8 SELF-CHECK

## VOCABULARY

## 1 Match appropriate halves of the sentences.

- Maria was determined to learn to walk on
- 1 I know that Charles is generally a well- ☐ f
- 2 While making a list of the highest- ☐
- 3 The producer turned out to be a very tight- ☐
- 4 When Julia got to represent our country at a festival, ☐
- rumours started to swirl ☐
- 5 The exhibition of Georgia's photos was quite mind- ☐
- a around the way she was nominated to do. ☐
- b blowing as she mainly focused on showing crime scenes. ☐
- c meaning person but he can be tactless at times. ☐
- d fisted woman economising on props. ☐
- e grossing movies of the century, we included all the ☐
- revenue streams. ☐
- f stilts to play very tall clowns in street events. ☐

/5

## 2 Complete the sentences with the correct words. The first and last letters are given.

- During the rehearsal the conductor concentrated on getting the **percussive** rhythms right. He didn't want it to sound as if somebody was just hitting **the** drums.
- 1 You wouldn't believe the **s**\_\_\_\_\_ **r** sense of euphoria when they saw Michael performing on stage.
- 2 When Helen received a standing ovation after the talk, it dawned on her that her experience must have had **f**\_\_\_\_\_ **g** implications.
- 3 My brother, the owner of a successful online music store, was talked into opening a **p**\_\_\_\_\_ **p** shop for a few days just to get better known in our town.
- 4 Instead of coming up with **f**\_\_\_\_\_ **d** excuses for not coming to rehearsals, tell us if you want to perform with our troupe or not.
- 5 The local authorities decided that the disused industrial estate should be turned into a creative **h**\_\_\_\_\_ **b** where local artists could meet and work.

/5

## 3 Read the text. Complete the gaps with the correct forms of the words in brackets.

On my way through London a few years ago, I watched as thousands of runners took part in the London Marathon. It was a **mesmerising** (mesmerise) sight. And it was to change my life for ever.

At that time I was struggling to survive as a composer. I was working on an opera about two <sup>1</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (war) families that were fighting with each other for dominance, but because I was stuck for ideas as to how to finish it, I took up running to see whether it would inspire me. It was such a success, especially the changes in the <sup>2</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (choir) arrangements that now I run five or six times a week. I am sure that if I have written anything at all <sup>3</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (innovation), it is due to my running.

I have a <sup>4</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (suspect) that the current popularity of running is because it gives people some control over their lives. Charity runs, for example, mean that people can make a stand and show both mental and physical <sup>5</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (defy) about what is happening in the world.

/5

## GRAMMAR

## 4 Complete the sentences with one word.

- We'll be unable to offer you a discount on the CDs **unless** you buy at least five of them.
- 1 \_\_\_\_\_ it not for the sea walls, the open air theatre would be at risk of flooding.
- 2 The secretary would have told you what courses were available \_\_\_\_\_ you had had your ID or not.
- 3 Say you \_\_\_\_\_ accused of plagiarism, what then?
- 4 Always have your passport with you in the \_\_\_\_\_ of unexpected checks of tourists in the streets.
- 5 Fortunately, Ann lost some weight before the opening night. \_\_\_\_\_, her costume wouldn't have fitted her.

/5

## 5 Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first. Do not change the words in capitals. Use between four and six words in each gap.

Amy is very shy so she was speechless when she eventually met the singer. **NOT**

If she weren't so shy, Amy **would not have been** speechless when she eventually met the singer.

- 1 If my sports teacher hadn't encouraged me, I would never have become a successful figure skater. **BUT** \_\_\_\_\_, I would have never become a successful figure skater.
- 2 Normally, nobody is allowed backstage, but what would you say if we just went there after the play? **WHAT** \_\_\_\_\_ after the play, what would you say? I know that normally nobody is allowed there.
- 3 Helena's membership won't be renewed unless she pays her subscription within the next week. **SHOULD** \_\_\_\_\_ within the next week, her membership won't be renewed.
- 4 If you started learning the drums now, you would soon be able to perform during school events. **WERE** \_\_\_\_\_ the drums now, you would soon be able to perform during school events.
- 5 No tourist may enter unless they wear helmets. **CONDITION** Tourists may enter \_\_\_\_\_ helmets.

/5

## 6 Correct the mistakes in the sentences.

Do you agree there should be more parking places during the festival? If don't, why do you think so? **not**

- 1 Only if the conductor himself asked the audience, I'm sure somebody wouldn't comply with his request. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Dan's first animated film looked as though he had made many before. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 If though in doubt, Pete should consult his speech therapist and even practise his talk with her. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 There are very few celebrities, if so, who relish being followed by paparazzi day and night. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 A: Everybody is saying that our team is going to win the championship.  
B: Even if! \_\_\_\_\_

/5

Total /30

## USE OF ENGLISH

## 7 Choose the correct answer A, B, C or D.

Lucy Riches was first brought to the public's attention in a **D** of publicity with the publication of her first novel at the age of thirteen. Only a year later she was the proud <sup>1</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ of the Bookclub Prize, an extremely <sup>2</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ award for any writer, let alone a teenager.

*The Chosen* is a terrifying and action-<sup>3</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ fantasy novel with an imaginative <sup>4</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ of characters. Lucy was determined to break away from stereotypical novels aimed at young people and has turned out a <sup>5</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ different one. She also wanted to create a piece that would have a <sup>6</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ -chilling plot.

Lucy, now a level-headed fifteen-year old, has just finished the second novel in what will be a three-part series, which is to <sup>7</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ readers' imaginations even more than the first one. She's currently <sup>8</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ her breath to hear her publisher's verdict on the new book.

- |                  |                |               |                 |
|------------------|----------------|---------------|-----------------|
| A stir           | B bustle       | C tumult      | <b>D</b> flurry |
| 1 A recipient    | B acquirer     | C receiver    | D receptor      |
| 2 A top          | B major        | C prestigious | D peak          |
| 3 A cramped      | B packed       | C jammed      | D loaded        |
| 4 A cast         | B team         | C family      | D crew          |
| 5 A convincingly | B painfully    |               |                 |
| C refreshingly   | D considerably |               |                 |
| 6 A feet         | B spine        | C blood       | D shoulder      |
| 7 A provoke      | B depict       | C plead       | D fuel          |
| 8 A keeping      | B holding      | C taking      | D saving        |

/8

## 8 Complete the text with one word in each gap.

## Is the cinema dead?

For many years now, people have been predicting the end of the cinema. **After** all, why would you bother to go when films can be accessed on laptops and smartphones? In <sup>1</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ case, haven't young people rejected film-going in favour <sup>2</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ playing video games instead?

The exception to this, of course, is big budget Hollywood blockbusters, when young people seem to pack cinemas <sup>3</sup>\_\_\_\_\_. Recently, however, there has been a drive to make films specifically targeting the 'grey market.' It was predicted that if cinemas <sup>4</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ to start offering reduced prices mid-week and a more luxurious cinema-going experience, with more comfortable seats and provision of drinks and snacks, older people would be more likely to attend. They were right. Meanwhile, adventurous young people are being attracted by <sup>5</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ known as 'Secret Cinema', <sup>6</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ audiences pay upfront to see unnamed films in undisclosed venues such as disused schools and warehouses.

So, against all expectations, the cinema is clearly still alive and kicking more than eighty years after 'talking pictures' first hit the screen.

/6

## 9 Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first. Do not change the words in capitals. Use between three and five words in each gap.

Whatever you do, you should avoid going out in cold weather. With the concert coming up, you shouldn't risk catching a cold. **COSTS**

You should avoid going out in cold **at all costs**. With the concert coming up, you shouldn't risk catching a cold.

- 1 Jo has recently behaved on stage like she was a prima ballerina, while in reality she's by no means the best. **THOUGH**

While in reality she's by no means the best, Jo has recently behaved on stage \_\_\_\_\_ a prima ballerina.

- 2 If somebody had renovated the theatre years ago, it wouldn't be in such a terrible state now. **DONE**  
The theatre wouldn't be in such a terrible state now if it \_\_\_\_\_ years ago.

- 3 My father only lent me his collection of old LPs provided that I'd be very careful with them. **ON**  
My father lent me his collection of old LPs only \_\_\_\_\_ I'd be very careful with them.

- 4 It's not very likely that there will be an evacuation but if there is, stay calm and follow the signs to the emergency exit. **UNLIKELY**  
In \_\_\_\_\_ an evacuation, stay calm and follow the signs to the emergency exit.

- 5 The producer wasn't bold enough to go back on his word after having promised me my own TV programme. **NERVE**  
Having promised me my own TV programme, the producer \_\_\_\_\_ go back on his word.

- 6 The actress made the director so furious that he could hardly control his anger. **CHECK**  
The director was so furious with the actress that he could hardly \_\_\_\_\_.

/6

Total /20



# 8 Text me!

## 8.1

### VOCABULARY

Information and the mind • prefixes  
• verb-noun collocations  
• phrases with *mind*

#### SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

- 1 Complete the sentences by filling the gap and choosing the correct word.

Silence please! We need your *undivided* *attention* / *information* while we explain what to do in the event of a fire in the building.

- The court accuses you of *w* \_\_\_\_\_ *attention* / *information* in an attempt to pervert the course of justice.
- Since I started going to bed earlier, I've noticed that my *attention* / *information* *s* \_\_\_\_\_ has improved during lessons.
- At the very heart of cognitive psychology is the idea of *attention* / *information* *p* \_\_\_\_\_.
- As a scientist, I am only interested in *f* \_\_\_\_\_ *attention* / *information* and not in unfounded opinions or beliefs.
- You *p* \_\_\_\_\_ more *attention* / *information* to your phone than you do to your friends.

#### WORD STORE 8A | Prefixes

- 2 Complete the sentences with the correct forms of the words from the box and an appropriate prefix.

existence estimate fact impose  
inform load task trust

- She has a deep *mistrust* of dentists and as a result the majority of her teeth are severely decayed.
- If I open more than a couple of apps at the same time, it totally \_\_\_\_\_ the processor in my phone and the whole thing freezes.
  - Many claims about the so-called health benefits of herbal remedies are based on \_\_\_\_\_ rather than solid science.
  - Working mothers are often champion \_\_\_\_\_, juggling the responsibilities of motherhood with the pursuit of a career.
  - It emerged that the witness had been paid by the defendants to provide a testimony filled with lies and \_\_\_\_\_.
  - Never \_\_\_\_\_ the power of peaceful protest – join the march and make your voice heard.
  - Doubtful of my own willpower, I decided to enlist the help of a personal trainer after my \_\_\_\_\_ exercise regime failed miserably.
  - Why can't people simply \_\_\_\_\_ peacefully instead of hating and fighting each other?

- 3 Complete the text with appropriate prefixes. Use hyphens (-) where necessary.

#### joystick-magazine.com's game of the week

**Black Run** for the all home consoles is a *multi-disciplinary* sports simulation game which includes individual and 1 \_\_\_\_\_ operative game play modes. To say the graphics are sharp would be an 2 \_\_\_\_\_ statement – the mountain environments are rendered beautifully and the movement of characters is utterly convincing. Game play requires skill and 3 \_\_\_\_\_ composure – it's easy to 4 \_\_\_\_\_ estimate your ability to turn at speed in ski and snowboard disciplines, for example, and find yourself launched off the nearest cliff and into thin air. Hours of snowy fun to be had here – highly deserving of the title 'game of the week'.

#### WORD STORE 8B | Verb-noun collocations

- 4 Complete the extract from a relaxation CD recording. The first letters are given.



'Welcome to 'A Soul's Search'. To make the most of this relaxation CD, ensure you listen in a comfortable environment where you will not be disturbed. Switch off all your communication devices and when you are ready, lie back, close your eyes and begin to empty your mind of everything that normally *clutters* your thoughts. Daily life can take its *t* \_\_\_\_\_ on your mind and body and lead to unnecessary stress and worry. Most of us are aware that taking time out for relaxation is vital for our physical and mental health but the demands of work and family mean we often *b* \_\_\_\_\_ ourselves to this. With the help of this recording, you are going to *d* \_\_\_\_\_ some much-needed attention to yourself. Initially, we will *p* \_\_\_\_\_ relaxation tasks and techniques that require minimal practice, so those who are more experienced may *d* \_\_\_\_\_ a bias towards the basic. However, we will build steadily towards more advanced techniques, with the ultimate goal of deep and unhurried meditation to heal your mind and body.'

#### WORD STORE 8C | Phrases with *mind*

- 5 Complete the extracts from tech reviews with the words from the box. There are two extra words.

absent blow business clear crossed  
manners out tough two weigh

Extreme sports fans, be prepared to be amazed by the new YesPro helmet cam. The slow-motion video capture will *blow* your mind.

You would have to be *absent* of your mind to pay twice as much for a phone that offers half the functionality of the latest model from PlusOne.

If you were in *two* minds about which tablet computer to go for, a quick look at the specs of the latest model from Samsung could convince you that this is the one.

Are you the *business*-minded type? Always forgetting important times and dates? Persoft's Personal Assistant 2.0 could be the personal organiser app you've been waiting for.

The *clear*-minded amongst you may not think twice about deleting old photos, but if you are sentimental enough to want to hang on to all your snaps, then what you need is reliable storage.

The anonymity of internet chat spaces and message boards can lead even those who would normally *weigh* their *s* \_\_\_\_\_ to be extremely rude and aggressive while interacting with strangers.

With tech companies' relentless drive to sell us the latest phones and laptops, has it ever *crossed* your mind just how many apparently 'obsolete' devices are piling up around the world?

When we asked the software company's CEO to comment on the outcry surrounding their controversial game, we were told bluntly to 'mind our own *business*'.

#### WORD STORE 8D | EXTRA Phrases with *mind*

- 6 Complete the sentences with phrases with *mind* in the correct form. Use the definitions in brackets to help you.

You can accomplish anything if you *put your mind to it* (decide you are going to do something and give it all your effort).

- If people could just be a little more \_\_\_\_\_ (liberal), this would be a much nicer country in which to live.
- I've stopped watching the news because people are just so awful to each other and it \_\_\_\_\_ (troubles or worries me) and makes me depressed.
- I find an early morning swim \_\_\_\_\_ (helps me forget the things that are troubling me) more effectively than anything else.

#### SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

- 7 Choose the best answer A–C to complete the sentences.

- Stereotypically labelled as enemies, dogs and cats can, in actual fact, happily \_\_\_\_\_.  
A cooperate B multi-task C coexist
- The impact that the Internet would have on daily life was definitely \_\_\_\_ in the 1990s.  
A underestimated B self-composed C overloaded
- The troubled president has willingly gone into \_\_\_\_ exile in a remote region of Burundi.  
A multi-disciplinary B self-imposed C understated
- It's the air of superiority and the flashy suits that lead me to \_\_\_\_ car salesmen.  
A mistrust B misinform C overestimate
- To call Maria's voice exceptional would be a(n) \_\_\_\_ – she had the voice of a legendary jazz singer.  
A understatement B pseudo-fact C bias

- 8 Complete each pair of sentences with the same answer A–C.

- a \_\_\_\_ ahead! Slow down and have your ticket and money ready.  
b Years of staring at a computer screen have taken their \_\_\_\_ on Anna's eyesight.  
A strain B toll C gate
- a If I \_\_\_\_ attention to one dog, the other one barks and whines. It's a no win situation!  
b With this pledge I hereby \_\_\_\_ myself to upholding the law and protecting my fellow citizens.  
A show B promise C devote
- a Such tragic news can't help but \_\_\_\_ on your mind, I'm sure.  
b A normal-sized matchbox filled with neutron star material would \_\_\_\_ approximately 5 trillion tons.  
A hold B weigh C prey
- a I paid the price for \_\_\_\_-mindedly leaving my Facebook page open on the school computer.  
b One of the biggest social factors accelerating gang membership is the number of young men with \_\_\_\_ or neglectful fathers.  
A short B tough C absent
- a My laptop gets so hot I have to set up the fan to \_\_\_\_ cool air on it and stop it switching itself off.  
b Some of the products at this year's tech-innovation exhibition are guaranteed to \_\_\_\_ your mind.  
A blow B push C open

/10





## READING

8.2

FOMO • collocations • phrases

**Are you frequently overwhelmed by the feeling that life is leaving you behind, particularly when you browse social media sites and are confronted with all the exciting things your friends are up to? If so, you are not alone.**

FOMO, or Fear of Missing Out, is a very real phenomenon which is currently exercising the minds of psychologists and sociologists alike. While it may not be a new manifestation of social unease, the advent of social media has certainly shone a spotlight on the problem, and may very well have exacerbated the problem.

FOMO alludes to the perception that other people's lives are superior to our own, whether this concerns socialising, accomplishing professional goals or generally having a more deeply fulfilling life. It manifests itself as a deep sense of envy, and constant exposure to it can have a debilitating effect on our self-esteem. The feeling that we are always being left out of fundamentally important events, or that our lives are not living up to the image portrayed by others, can have long-term damaging psychological consequences.

While feelings of envy and inadequacy seem to be innately human\*, social media seems

to have added fuel to the fire in several ways. The reason why social media has such an exaggerated triggering effect is inextricably\* tied to the inherent\* appeal of social media in the first place: these are platforms which allow us to share only the most glowing\* presentations of our accomplishments, while leaving out the more tedious aspects of life. While this kind of misrepresentation could be characterised as dishonest, it is what the polished ambience\* of social media seems to demand.

So how do we avoid being lured into the trap of our own insecurities by social media? Firstly, consider your own social media posts. Have you ever chosen photos or quotes which lead others to the rosiest\* conclusions about your life? Well, so have others – and what they've left hidden is the inalterable fact

that boredom, loneliness and the sheer mundanity of the day-to-day are inexorably\* a part of everyone's life, and you're not the only one feeling left out. Secondly, learn to appreciate the positives. You may not be a regular at glamorous parties or a climber of dizzying peaks, but you have your health, a place to live, and real friends who appreciate your presence in their lives. Last of all, learn to shake it off. We are all bombarded daily with images of other people's perfections, but really, what does it matter? They are probably no more real than the most ludicrous reality TV show. And even if you are more susceptible than others to social media envy, all that's needed to put it all into perspective is to look around you and acknowledge that you are doing pretty well after all.



## 1 Read the article quickly and choose the best title.

- 1 Myths and Misconceptions about FOMO
- 2 FOMO: What It Is and How to Cope
- 3 How FOMO is Changing Human Relationships

## 2 Read the article again. For questions 1–4, choose the correct answer A–D.

- 1 According to the second paragraph, frequently experiencing FOMO can lead to
  - A less likelihood of professional success.
  - B a less satisfying social life.
  - C harm to one's feeling of intrinsic value.
  - D damage to the opinion others have of a person's worth.
- 2 In the third paragraph, the author suggests that
  - A social media are the only cause of FOMO.
  - B the nature of social media encourages the creation of false impressions.
  - C our own social media posts help us feel more confident.
  - D people who share mundane posts on social media are more confident.
- 3 In the fourth paragraph, the main reason the author refers to reality TV shows is to
  - A point out how artificial what we see on social media can be.
  - B emphasise the huge popularity of social media.
  - C point out that what we see on social media should never be taken seriously.
  - D emphasise how sophisticated social media has become.
- 4 According to the article, what advice would the author NOT give to FOMO sufferers?
  - A Focus on the good things in your life.
  - B Post only the most positive things about your life on social media.
  - C Remind yourself that much of social media is misleading.
  - D Learn to dismiss the negative feelings you get from social media.

## 3 Complete the definitions with the words from the box. Use the text to help you.

allude bombard characterise exacerbate  
have leave manifest put

leave sth out – not include sth

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_ a **problem** – make a problem worse than it was
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_ **sth into perspective** – correctly view the importance of sth
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_ **sb/sth as** – describe someone or something in a particular way
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_ **sb with sth** – make someone face or deal with a lot of sth
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_ **to sth** – mention or call attention to sth
- 6 \_\_\_\_\_ **itself as** – show itself in a particular form or manner
- 7 \_\_\_\_\_ a **debilitating effect** on sth – cause damage to sth

## 4 Match the sentence beginnings and endings. Use the text to help you.

- Having been called a child genius, it was difficult for him to live
- 1 When browsing the Internet, it is easy to get lured
  - 2 I was already angry at him, but it simply added fuel
  - 3 Her brilliant article shone
  - 4 It is often a challenge for young people to accomplish
  - 5 Your problems may seem huge, but talking about them can put
  - 6 Experts agree that the advent
- A their professional goals while raising a family.  
B into the trap of endless links and comments.  
C of social media changed the way people relate to each other.  
D up to the image later in life.  
E to the fire when he criticised my appearance.  
F them into perspective.  
G a spotlight on the problem of Internet bullying.

## WORD STORE 8E | Phrases

## 5 Choose the most suitable answer A–C to complete the sentences.

- 1 Many years ago, George's father invested in a small tech company called Apple, and he and the family have been reaping the \_\_\_ ever since.  
A pluses B benefits C advantages
- 2 Having to replace my broken laptop took a big \_\_\_ out of my savings.  
A bite B amount C bit
- 3 Something about the defendant's testimony didn't quite ring \_\_\_.  
A right B honest C true
- 4 Di is such a talented musician that learning a completely new instrument \_\_\_ easy to her.  
A will be B does C comes
- 5 The concept of recycling is only just beginning to \_\_\_ traction in certain parts of the country.  
A gain B give C get
- 6 The key to completing an ultramarathon is just to keep putting one \_\_\_ in front of the other no matter what.  
A shoe B foot C leg



## GLOSSARY

**innately human** (adv) – referring to sth humans are born with  
**inextricably** (adv) – inseparably  
**inherent** (adj) – natural, inborn

**glowing/rosy** (adj) – very positive  
**ambience** (n) – atmosphere  
**inexorably** (adv) – unable to stop



# GRAMMAR

8.3

Reporting verb patterns

## SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

### 1 Put the verbs in brackets in the correct form.

Remember to top up (top up) your mobile before going on holiday.

- Even though Amber told Dylan to stop texting her, he went on \_\_\_\_\_ (send) her unsolicited messages.
- If you want to have a successful date, try \_\_\_\_\_ (switch off) your phone beforehand.
- I remember \_\_\_\_\_ (be) told off by my teacher in the first year of primary school.
- I could tell he was trying \_\_\_\_\_ (control) his voice during the talk, but his nervousness still came through.
- Having graduated with honours from university, Elijah went on \_\_\_\_\_ (become) a successful barrister.

### 2 ★ Put in the missing prepositions.

- R: Zoe, would you object to someone quitting their job by text?
- Z: Well, I'm ashamed to admit that I did it once myself.
- R: Seriously? I'd never have suspected you <sup>1</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ doing something like that!
- Z: Rose, before you accuse me <sup>2</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ being selfish, you need to know that I tried to meet my boss several times before sending the text.
- R: Well, in that case I can almost understand it. I mean, I won't praise you <sup>3</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ the way you handled it, but I'm not going to accuse you <sup>4</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ being selfish, either.
- Z: In my defense, I did apologise to my boss <sup>5</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ choosing that form of communication, but he just left me no choice. I'd never do it again and I'm definitely not going to boast <sup>6</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ it to anyone.
- R: And I'm sure no one is going to congratulate you <sup>7</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ having made that choice – certainly not your co-workers! I can almost understand your treating the boss like that, but I'm sure your team had plenty to complain <sup>8</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ when they discovered you weren't coming back.
- Z: I did feel awful about that, but I got in touch with them later and they completely understood. They did say the boss was threatening to go to court and charge me <sup>9</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ breaking my contract, which was so typical of him! Fortunately, that never happened, and I've insisted <sup>10</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ having short-term contracts with all my subsequent employers.
- R: That makes sense. You don't want to have that sort of experience more than once, do you?

### 3 ★★ Choose the best option. Sometimes more than one is correct.

- Emma claimed *that she was / being / to be* the one who was unfairly dismissed.
- Charlie admitted *hacking / that he had hacked / to have hacked* Phoebe's Facebook account.
- We advise users *that they create / create / to create* passwords with numbers and special characters.
- Harper threatened *exposing / to expose / that she would expose* her ex-partner as a cheat and a liar.
- Leo regrets *believing / that he believed / to have believed* those preposterous conspiracy theories.
- My neighbour urged me *to get in touch / that I should get in touch / if I could get in touch* with her immediately.

### 4 ★★★ Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first. Do not change the words in capitals. Use between four and six words in each gap.

- 'Let's resolve the matter amicably,' the mediator suggested. **RESOLVING**  
The mediator suggested resolving the matter amicably.
- 'I think it would be a good idea if you went there on your own, Jason,' his coach proposed. **GO**  
Jason's coach proposed \_\_\_\_\_ his own.
  - 'We must treat the Prime Minister's daughter like other students,' the head teacher recommended. **BE**  
The head teacher recommended that the \_\_\_\_\_ like other students.
  - 'Why don't you put us in the picture before you leave, Jacob?' his parents suggested. **SHOULD**  
Jacob's parents suggested \_\_\_\_\_ picture before he left.
  - 'We should allow the students to pick the venue for the prom night,' the English teacher insisted. **THAT**  
The English teacher insisted \_\_\_\_\_ to pick the venue for the prom night.

## SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

### 5 Complete the sentences with the words in brackets in the correct forms. Do not change the word order. Use between four and six words in each gap.

- When I first met her, she advised me to buy the latest (advise/I/buy/latest) model of smartphone.
- After the race, everybody \_\_\_\_\_ (congratulate/she/win/place) on the school team.
  - While thanking his voters, the President \_\_\_\_\_ (claim/he/always/be) a staunch supporter of democracy.
  - Now our cousin \_\_\_\_\_ (regret/not/be/able) stay longer to celebrate the birthday of our baby son.
  - Last May one student objected \_\_\_\_\_ (have/he/phone/take) away from him during A-levels.
  - Despite many unsuccessful attempts, he still \_\_\_\_\_ (try/convince/(one)self) he could fix the broken phone.
  - Yesterday some MPs tentatively \_\_\_\_\_ (suggest/he/be/oust) from power.

/6





## USE OF ENGLISH

### 8.4

#### Passive reporting structures

#### 1 Transform the sentence beginnings into the Passive.

They say that ... → It **is said** that ...

- 1 People supposed that ... → It \_\_\_\_\_ that ...
- 2 Everybody thinks that ... → It \_\_\_\_\_ that ...
- 3 Quite a few people have suggested that ...  
→ It \_\_\_\_\_ that ...
- 4 All the neighbours knew that ... → It \_\_\_\_\_ that ...

#### 2 Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first.

They believe that Facebook has changed their life.  
Facebook **is believed to have changed** their life.

- 1 Newspapers report that some participants of amateur talent shows aren't quite as amateur as TV stations would have us believe.  
Some participants of amateur talent shows \_\_\_\_\_ quite as amateur as TV stations would have us believe.
- 2 At last month's conference many presenters feared that a large number of teenagers had grown so attached to the reality of social media that it was impossible for them to cut the chord.  
At last month's conference a large number of teenagers \_\_\_\_\_ so attached to the reality of social media that it was impossible for them to cut the chord.
- 3 Some parents have pointed out that the new school rules weren't discussed with them in any way.  
The new rules \_\_\_\_\_ discussed with parents in any way.
- 4 Last Friday they alleged that many viral YouTube videos were hoaxes.  
Last Friday many viral YouTube videos \_\_\_\_\_ hoaxes.
- 5 Specialists agree that seeking validation online in the form of retweets and likes is exacerbating our desire to be accepted.  
Seeking validation online in the form of retweets and likes \_\_\_\_\_ our desire to be accepted.

#### 3 Read the sentences in bold. Then replace each sentence in the text with two types of the Passive.

### LIFE HACKING

People say that the term 'life hack' was coined in 2004 by technology journalist Danny O'Brien during the O'Reilly Emerging Technology Conference in San Diego, California.

- a It **is said that the term 'life hack' was coined** in 2004 by technology journalist Danny O'Brien during the O'Reilly Emerging Technology Conference in San Diego, California.
- b The term 'life hack' **is said to have been coined** in 2004 by technology journalist Danny O'Brien during the O'Reilly Emerging Technology Conference in San Diego, California.

- 1 Back then people understood that the phrase described the shortcuts IT specialists used to complete their work.  
a Back then it \_\_\_\_\_ the shortcuts IT specialists used to complete their work.  
b Back then the phrase \_\_\_\_\_ the shortcuts IT specialists used to complete their work.
- 2 Linguists assume that since then the phrase has spread among the tech and blogging community.  
a It \_\_\_\_\_ among the tech and blogging community.  
b The phrase \_\_\_\_\_ among the tech and blogging community.
- 3 Nowadays everyone widely acknowledges that life hacking refers to any kind of trick, shortcut, skill, or a novelty method that is meant to increase productivity and efficiency.  
a It \_\_\_\_\_ to any kind of trick, shortcut, skill, or a novelty method that is meant to increase productivity and efficiency.  
b Life hacking \_\_\_\_\_ to any kind of trick, shortcut, skill, or a novelty method that is meant to increase productivity and efficiency.
- 4 YouTube users consider that life hack videos have become the solution to a wide array of common problems.  
a It \_\_\_\_\_ the solution to a wide array of common problems.  
b Life hack videos \_\_\_\_\_ the solution to a wide array of common problems.
- 5 People also claim that those short clips are constantly helping them do different things the right way.  
a It \_\_\_\_\_ people do different things the right way.  
b Those short clips \_\_\_\_\_ people do different things the right way.

#### SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

#### 4 Complete the sentences with the words in brackets in the correct forms. Do not change the word order. Use between four and six words in each gap.

**It is said that** (it/say) she was only after his money.

- 1 It \_\_\_\_\_ (final/announce/Wednesday) online shops would have to comply with the new tax law.
- 2 Some vloggers \_\_\_\_\_ (be/know/become) more popular than some pop bands.
- 3 It \_\_\_\_\_ (be/estimate/recent) this phenomenon has taken YouTube by storm.
- 4 The company was alleged \_\_\_\_\_ (be/force) tech bloggers into promoting its products for some time now.
- 5 It \_\_\_\_\_ (be/assume) all YouTubers are rolling in it, but that's a common misconception.
- 6 She's been implied \_\_\_\_\_ (have/get) married only as part of a publicity stunt.



8.5

LISTENING LANGUAGE PRACTICE

Cloze • informal phrases  
• word building • collocations

1 Choose the correct answer A–D to complete the conversation between the interviewer, Mark and Paula.

Extract from Student's Book recording 3.18

I: Mark, <sup>a</sup>set the scene for us. How would you describe the responsibilities of a professional newspaper journalist?

M: I'd say we inform the public about events and issues and <sup>1</sup>\_\_ their potential impact. We <sup>b</sup>comb through public records and <sup>2</sup>\_\_ out other sources of information, such as interviewing people or visiting locations where <sup>3</sup>\_\_ incidents have taken place. The bottom line is we <sup>4</sup>\_\_ to present a truthful, well-balanced <sup>5</sup>\_\_ of things that have happened. Clearly, we <sup>c</sup>stay within the law and we're careful about things like the privacy of people we write about. And, of course, it goes without saying that we're good writers.

P: [...] Nowadays the prevalence of social media means that news <sup>6</sup>\_\_ out quickly and often people post or tweet things without <sup>d</sup>checking the facts. And <sup>7</sup>\_\_ their tweet goes viral, it may cause trouble if it's speculative rather than fact-based. But true citizen journalists may want to <sup>e</sup>tell their side of a story and <sup>8</sup>\_\_ up a discussion or they may just have happened to <sup>9</sup>\_\_ something and want to share their experience. Of course, they're unpaid and their views are their own. [...]

M: <sup>f</sup>From the opposing angle though [...] <sup>g</sup>there is always the question of whether they <sup>10</sup>\_\_ responsibly, and are backed up by <sup>11</sup>\_\_ data. Nevertheless, citizen journalism is regarded positively by many because amateurs provide an ordinary person's view and often <sup>h</sup>a fresh angle.

- 1 A value B price C assess D praise
- 2 A look B search C watch D seek
- 3 A memorable B noteworthy C prominent D noticeable
- 4 A struggle B strive C strain D scheme
- 5 A account B narrative C homage D explanation
- 6 A leaks B gets C escapes D flies
- 7 A whenever B how C however D if
- 8 A set B put C make D call
- 9 A sight B evidence C view D witness
- 10 A play B act C deal D serve
- 11 A solid B heavy C thick D rigid

2 Match the underlined phrases in the text to the definitions below.

a new or original viewpoint

- 1 to give your view of an event
- 2 to describe a place or situation
- 3 from the opposite point of view
- 4 used to introduce a problem or doubt
- 5 not to do anything illegal
- 6 to ensure your information is accurate
- 7 to search thoroughly for something

h

3 Put the expressions from the text into the dialogue between Pat and Aaron. Change the form if necessary.

- P: What's that you're reading? Oh no, that's not a gossip magazine, is it? I can't believe you're reading trash like that. They never check the/their facts but make things up and sensationalise everything to sell more copies.
- A: Alright, alright – don't go spare. I found it on the bus and started reading this interesting article about gangland crime in the UK. They <sup>1</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ by showing the current situation in London with some pretty shocking statistics. Then they interview this guy who <sup>2</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ starting with how he first got into gangs and how one thing led to another. It's actually interesting to hear things <sup>3</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ compared to the point of view you normally get on topics like this.
- P: Oh, really? And the journalists, if that's what you can call them, actually <sup>4</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ to get an illicit interview like that, did they? Sounds dubious to me. And as I said, <sup>5</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ or not you can rely on any of the information or even the sources of information at all. You'd have to <sup>6</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ a magazine like that word by word before you find a reliable fact. And that's why, even if they present things from <sup>7</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ like you say, you still need to take everything with a pinch of salt.
- A: I know, I know. I'm not that gullible, and besides, as I said, I'd never actually buy a magazine like this.

WORD STORE 8F | Collocations

4 Complete the sentences with the words in the box. There is one extra word.

account amateur citizen common  
fresh ideological impact media trust

Genuinely unbiased reporters always give a well-balanced account of the facts.

- 1 It's a very \_\_\_\_\_ misconception that fortune cookies are Chinese – in fact they're from Japan.
- 2 If you don't trust mainstream \_\_\_\_\_, get your news from independent sources on the Internet.
- 3 Despite plenty of \_\_\_\_\_ footage, no-one has proved the existence of UFOs.
- 4 Climate change deniers are those people that refuse to accept the potential \_\_\_\_\_ of global warming on our future lives.
- 5 We've recently seen a greatly increased \_\_\_\_\_ in news reported by the general public.
- 6 With the use of the Internet, more and more news is based on \_\_\_\_\_ reports and used by professional journalists to support their stories.
- 7 Read between the lines of most mass media and you'll see the \_\_\_\_\_ viewpoint of the editors and writers.




# 8.6

## SPEAKING

### Adding emphasis

#### 1 Expand the prompts to complete the experts' views.



**We asked a number of experts how they think the Internet will evolve over the next decade. Here is what they said ...**

no / question  
*There's no question* that everyone's privacy is under threat.

1 one / thing / disturb / me  
 \_\_\_\_\_ that it will become easier for authorities to spy on us all in the name of national security.

2 absolutely / certain / my view  
 \_\_\_\_\_ that health care will improve as a result of Internet-based technology.

3 we / need / aware / fact  
 \_\_\_\_\_ that as cameras get smaller, they will be, literally, everywhere, transmitting data about our every move.

4 not / overlook / fact  
 \_\_\_\_\_ that connectivity will become even more widespread through mobile, wearable and embedded computing.

5 I / not / convince  
 \_\_\_\_\_ that the future is all bright and I have serious concerns about the possible breakdown of traditional interpersonal relationships.

#### 2 In each sentence, choose the option which is not possible.

- And don't *forget* / *bother* / *overlook* the fact that this games console is accompanied by two controllers as standard.
- There's no *point* / *question* / *doubt* that rechargeable batteries represent better value for money than disposable ones.
- The one thing that really *bothers* / *disturbs* / *disagrees* me is how easily kids can access adult content on their phones.
- I think the key *crux* / *thing* / *issue* is to encourage people away from screens and into the great outdoors.
- What's *critical* / *cognizant* / *crucial* is to check your privacy settings and change your passwords regularly.
- I'm absolutely *certain* / *adamant* / *decided* in my view that technology has improved our lives.

#### 3 Replace the words in bold in the dialogues with the words from the box so that the meaning is the same.

adamant cognizant disturbs  
 doubt forget main point sure

##### Conversation 1: Pauline and Gina

P: I hear that in the US, some supermarket chains, particularly those with stores in affluent areas, get their cashiers to ask every customer whether they'd like to contribute to charity at the checkout. I'm not **convinced** / sure that that's fair really. There's no **question** / \_\_\_\_\_ that asking the public in that way puts pressure on people to contribute, whether they want to or not.

G: Well, to some extent I agree. I mean, we need to be **aware** / \_\_\_\_\_ of the fact that it is morally questionable to shame people into giving, but having said that we shouldn't **overlook** / \_\_\_\_\_ the fact that most people living in such places can probably afford to give a few cents on top of their weekly shop. The **crux of the issue** / \_\_\_\_\_ is whether it's more important to raise money for charity or to protect the rights of those who might feel unduly pressured.

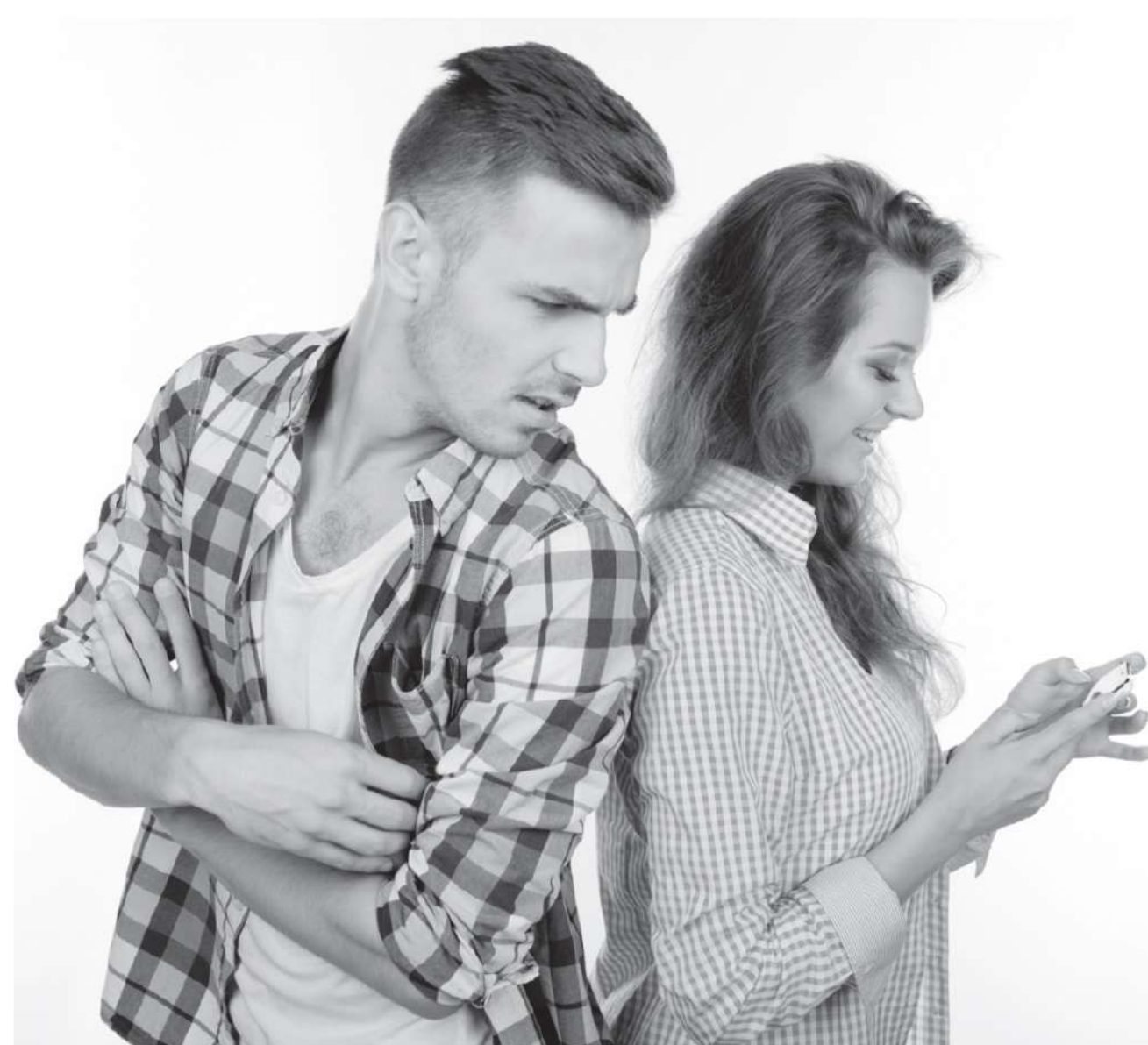
##### Conversation 2: Matthew and Jake

M: Jenny and I had a big argument yesterday.

J: Oh dear. About what?

M: About the fact that she spends so much time on her phone. The one thing that really **bothers** / \_\_\_\_\_ me is that she ignores me, you know? I can be telling her a whole story then she looks up from her phone half way through and says 'What?'

J: I know exactly what you mean. I think lots of people are guilty of that these days. I'm absolutely **certain** / \_\_\_\_\_ in my view that so-called communication technology is damaging our personal relationships in certain ways.





## WRITING

8.7

A formal email/letter

- 1 Complete the advice with the words from the box. There are two extra words.

formal organisation persuasive  
reasons reiterate responding  
salutation sign support

When writing a formal email or letter, begin with an appropriate <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ and inform the reader what the letter is <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ to or regarding. Briefly state your <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ for writing and then, in the second paragraph, introduce your first point and <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ it with examples. Start another new paragraph to introduce and support your second point and again, another new paragraph to conclude and <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ your point of view. At the end of your email or letter, be sure to <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ off appropriately.



- 2 Read the task and the model letter and underline arguments that refer to the three bullet points in the task.

You have read an article about allowing students Internet access during exams in the online edition of a British newspaper. You decide to respond to the article by writing a letter to the editor, giving your own views. Your letter should include responses to these points from the article:

- Allowing Internet access during exams goes against the whole idea of traditional evaluation and would mean a complete redesign of the assessment process.
- Students won't retain core subject knowledge if they can simply copy facts from websites during exams.
- What is the point of, for example, a language exam, if students can just use an online translation tool? Exams are easier than they were these days anyway, without dumbing them down even further by allowing Internet access.

Dear Editor,

I am writing in response to a recent article in your newspaper about whether to allow students to use the Internet during exams. While the author offered several reasons to **maintain the status quo**, she failed to mention any **arguments to the contrary**.

It is <sup>1</sup>*certainly true / truly certain* that core knowledge is important and that an exam where students simply copy facts from a website would be pointless. <sup>2</sup>*Truly equal / Equally true*, however, is that in the 21st century, the Internet is used constantly to search for answers to **all manner of** questions that **arise** during our working and private lives. If the role of education is to prepare us for real life, then perhaps traditional assessment methods do need to be **overhauled**. Today's reality is that, rather than regurgitating facts, students need to demonstrate their ability to filter, interpret and apply online data. <sup>3</sup>*We should not / Should we not* therefore, in addition to encouraging retention of core knowledge, include at least some exam questions that allow the use of the Internet and test these skills?

Taking the author's example of languages, <sup>4</sup>*it would / would it* indeed be difficult to argue that Internet access during exams is appropriate for all subjects. However, <sup>5</sup>*were tasks / tasks were* designed appropriately, some subjects would be more suited to the digital equivalent of open-book assessment. Contrary to your reporter's claims, I do not believe this would necessarily reduce the level of challenge these exams present. As a case in point, many professional exams are open-book, and far from making them easier, the **wealth** of information **to hand** and the limited time available create challenges **akin** to the realities of the world of work.

To conclude, while I agree that allowing students to copy online facts during exams would be **absurd**, and that not all subjects would be suited to exams where Internet access is permitted, <sup>6</sup>*above all / all above* I feel that the realities of modern life should be reflected by the education system and its methods of assessment. If questions were designed to test critical thinking and interpretation of facts, then it is my view that allowing Internet access for certain exams or tasks would be a step in the right direction.

Yours faithfully  
G. Benson



- 3 Choose the correct words to complete the phrases for being persuasive in the model letter.
- 4 Put the words in order to form more phrases for being persuasive. Add commas where necessary.

that ... / without / goes / saying / it

*It goes without saying that ...*

1 true / it's / of / that ... / course

2 difficult / it / be / to / would / argue / that ...

3 that ... / is / it / a given

4 should / there / all / above / be ...

5 that ... / not / it / the / case / is

6 issues / not ... / despite / are / such / this

## REMEMBER THIS

We can use the auxiliary verb **do** to make sentences more emphatic or persuasive, especially when we are contradicting a point made earlier by someone else.

*If the role of education is to prepare us for real life, then perhaps traditional assessment methods **do** need to be overhauled.*

- 5 Match the correct form of the words and phrases in bold from the letter to the definitions below.

a wide range of

*all manner of*

1 large amount

2 come up

3 leave things as they are

4 examine thoroughly and make necessary repairs or improvements

5 similar to

6 opposing points

7 within easy reach

8 pointless or ridiculous

## SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

- 6 Read the writing task. Then follow the instructions below.

You have read an article about online lectures as an alternative to live lectures for university students in the online edition of a British newspaper. You decide to respond to the article by writing to the editor, giving your own views. Your letter should include responses to these points from the article:

- Information presented in live lectures may be easier to remember because students are stimulated by circumstances such as the lecturer's presentation style, the lecture venue and other students' reactions.
- Live lectures help students to develop skills such as discerning subtle arguments and making judgements when taking notes, as well as giving them an opportunity to make comments and ask questions.
- Attending lectures is a valuable part of the collective student experience and enough time is spent alone in front of screens already these days.

Before you start, follow steps 1–7 below.

- 1 Read the task carefully and check who you are writing to and why.
- 2 Decide whether or not you agree with the three points mentioned in the task.
- 3 Note down more arguments for and against.
- 4 Using your notes decide on your overall point of view.
- 5 Think how you will respond to each point in the task and how you will support your arguments.
- 6 Decide which language to use to sound persuasive.
- 7 Write your letter.

## SHOW THAT YOU'VE CHECKED

Finished? Always check your writing (especially in the exam!) Can you tick ✓ everything on this list?

In my formal email/letter:

- I have used an appropriate salutation (*Dear Sir/Madam/Editor*). ☐
- in the introductory paragraph, I have ☐
- › informed the reader what the letter is responding to, or regarding. ☐
- › briefly stated my reasons for writing. ☐
- in the main body paragraphs, I have introduced my arguments and supported them. ☐
- in the final paragraph, I have concluded and reiterated my standpoint. ☐
- I have signed off appropriately. ☐
- I have used a formal and impersonal style. ☐
- I have checked my spelling. ☐
- I have checked my handwriting is neat enough for someone else to read. ☐



## 8.8 SELF-CHECK

## VOCABULARY

- 1 Complete the sentences with the correct words. The first letters are given.

Women are said to be excellent at **multitasking** so cooking, talking on the phone and filling in a tax return at the same time doesn't seem to bother them.

- We live in a multicultural world so we need to be **b**\_\_\_\_\_ and open to other cultures.
- These days a lot of TV stations also use **a**\_\_\_\_\_ footage when they prepare the news bulletin.
- The Internet is full of information and it's difficult to filter out **p**\_\_\_\_\_ and decide what's true.
- I think we all suffer from information **o**\_\_\_\_\_ because of so many emails, tweets, etc.
- When you're struggling for ideas, invite kids to look at the problem from a fresh **a**\_\_\_\_\_.

/5

- 2 Complete the sentences with the verbs from the box in the correct form. There is one extra verb.

clear detect mind  
prioritise put reap ring

After a heavy day at work I usually take my **log** for a long walk to **clear** my mind and get mentally refreshed.

- Sue put a lot of time and effort into writing a series of articles about TV and now she is \_\_\_\_\_ the benefit of it as she was nominated the editor-in-chief.
- Students should be taught to \_\_\_\_\_ their tasks so that they learn which things to do first and which later.
- It was so embarrassing when my sister spilled some juice over an elderly woman. Before we could apologise, we heard '\_\_\_\_\_ your manners, young lady!'
- If you want to win this scholarship, you need to \_\_\_\_\_ your mind to it and think how to achieve it.
- Even though as a judge Richard should stay impartial, everybody could \_\_\_\_\_ bias in his speech.

/5

- 3 Read the text below and choose the correct verbs.

Picture the situation – you're in a packed restaurant, yet no-one is paying any attention to the person they're with, just **mind**ing / **accomplish**ing / **pursue**ing their own business. Everyone's on their tablets or mobiles, texting friends not lucky enough to be there. Doesn't it **say** / **ring** / **tell** true to you? For many of us it's a reality, not fiction. However, should we allow ourselves to be **disclosed** / **nurtured** / **blinkered** by the Internet instead of focusing more on the people around us?

Although I am in two **thoughts** / **minds** / **waves** whether mobile phones should be banned in public places, maybe one solution is a 'looks-like' phone, resembling the real thing. It even **crossed** / **moved** / **came** my mind that it could fit in a pocket so that its owner doesn't feel insecure.

If the 'looks-like' phone gained **reaction** / **premise** / **traction** with the public, potentially, this could reduce the toll technology takes on real relationships.

/5

## GRAMMAR

- 4 Correct the mistakes in the sentences.

The chairman demanded ~~us to install~~ anti-virus software on all the computers. **that we install**

- Maria denied to post any unfavourable messages about her boss on a social networking site. \_\_\_\_\_
- Josh reminded to his parents that he had chosen to study IT because they had made him do so. \_\_\_\_\_
- The traffic warden **urged** the tourists to not gather right in front of the museum. \_\_\_\_\_
- We all congratulated Kelly in winning a competition for the best webpage. \_\_\_\_\_
- After I lost my phone, I proposed my parents to buy me a second-hand one. \_\_\_\_\_

/5

- 5 Report the statements using the verbs from the box.

accuse beg explain  
persuade suggest threaten

'It'd be good to do some research on teenagers.

My tutor **persuaded me to do** some research on teenagers.

- 'I'll sack you if you reveal any confidential information'. My boss \_\_\_\_\_ if I revealed any confidential information.
- 'Ann, you didn't do a back-up before leaving the office'. The manager \_\_\_\_\_ a back-up before leaving the office.
- 'We just don't agree to you using any photos with our child.' Celia's parents \_\_\_\_\_ agree to the school using any photos with their child.
- 'Please, don't publish this', the politician asked a journalist. The politician \_\_\_\_\_ this.
- 'Jim, why don't you join us for lunch?' The manager \_\_\_\_\_ join them for lunch.

/5

- 6 Complete the second sentence so that means the same as the first. Do not change the words in capitals. Use between three and six words in each gap.

People think that he is the most watched dancer. **BE** He **is thought to be** the most watched dancer.

- There was a rumour that the video had received a million hits in one day. **SAID** The video \_\_\_\_\_ a million hits in one day.
- People believed that visits to the park had been on the increase for two weeks. **INCREASING** Visits to the park were \_\_\_\_\_ for two weeks.
- People say the popularity of Facebook is not as great as it was. **IS** The popularity of Facebook \_\_\_\_\_ its peak.
- Most people acknowledge his clip is the best. **WIDELY** His clip \_\_\_\_\_ the funniest.
- Because of services like Spotify®, it is thought we are spending even less money on music. **THOUGHT** We \_\_\_\_\_ even less money on music because of services like Spotify.

/5

Total /30

## USE OF ENGLISH

- 7 Choose the correct answer A, B, C or D.

## Could I live without it?

Even though friends **B** the opinion that I was crazy, I chose to cut off my home Internet connection. It was a <sup>1</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ decision, but one I had been unsure about for some time. What was <sup>2</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ on my mind was how I would feel without it – I didn't want to cut myself off completely, just not have it permanently to hand. I wasn't trying to prove a point; it <sup>3</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ to a feeling that my Internet use was controlling my life and in the long <sup>4</sup>\_\_\_\_\_, it might ruin it completely.

<sup>5</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ I can't pretend it was easy at first, my quality of life has drastically improved. Now I go out to cafés to find a Wi-Fi connection, which means I prioritise things instead of surfing. I can <sup>6</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ more attention to what's important, so my work has become more efficient and my mind less <sup>7</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ with random thoughts.

I'm enjoying a social environment chatting to different people, but my friends still think I'm <sup>8</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ my mind!

- |                  |                   |
|------------------|-------------------|
| A fringed        | B raised          |
| C proved         | D embraced        |
| 1 A self-imposed | B self-promoting  |
| C self-aware     | D self-indulgent  |
| 2 A hanging      | B holding         |
| C pressing       | D weighing        |
| 3 A get off      | B took up         |
| C came down      | D brought forward |
| 4 A view         | B run             |
| C time           | D distance        |
| 5 A Although     | B Even            |
| C Since          | D Given           |
| 6 A send         | B allow           |
| C provide        | D devote          |
| 7 A messy        | B untidy          |
| C cluttered      | D scattered       |
| 8 A up to        | B out of          |
| C in to          | D off with        |

/8

- 8 Complete the text with the correct forms of the words in brackets.

## To blog or not to blog?

Everyone thinks it's easy to be a blogger, but why should you **personally** (personal) blog? The idea that blogs tend to focus on trivial things is a <sup>1</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (concept), because in fact, it's helpful to share opinions with like-minded people. Anyway, don't <sup>2</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (estimate) the fact that you probably have something noteworthy to say. Blogs have a huge potential market and they're interactive, so <sup>3</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (told) numbers of readers are able to engage with you by posting comments. These can influence your ideas and possibly cause you to re-evaluate your position and force you to pay more attention to the <sup>4</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (objective) of your posts if readers detect bias in your words. What they say can sometimes be a revelation!

If you're thinking of writing a travel blog, you may be able to correct any possible <sup>5</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (inform) you spot on other websites. Readers then regard you as an expert, which helps you develop a bigger <sup>6</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (reader) and gets your name widely known – invaluable if you plan to self-publish a book on the Internet. Blogging can enrich your life. Why not try it?

/6

- 9 Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first. Do not change the words in capitals. Use between four and six words in each gap.

That most news is biased is completely obvious. **SAYING** It **goes without saying that** most news is biased.

- Apparently the documentary was prepared in collaboration with local charity organisations. **SAID** \_\_\_\_\_ the documentary was prepared in collaboration with local charity organisations.
- The movie star complained to the studio that his image was being used too much by them. **OVERUSING** The movie star complained that \_\_\_\_\_.
- Everybody knows that the number of Facebook users is decreasing. **KNOWN** The number of Facebook users \_\_\_\_\_ decreasing.
- It's important to make sure that young people go out into the fresh air every day. **BASIS** It's important to make sure that young people go out into the fresh air \_\_\_\_\_.
- Banks constantly warn customers to access their online accounts only on private networks. **SHOULD** Banks constantly warn customers \_\_\_\_\_ their online accounts on networks which are not private.
- The fine meant that the company's profit last quarter was a lot lower than expected. **BITE** A very large \_\_\_\_\_ the company's expected profit for last quarter due to the fine.

/6

Total /20



# 9 Future Generations

## VOCABULARY

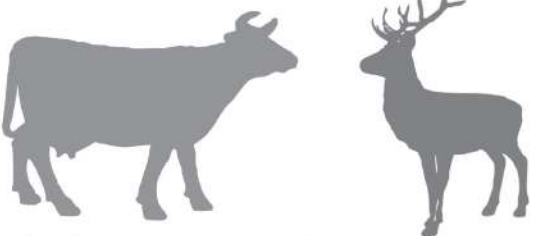
9.1

Global warming • synonyms  
• environmental problems  
• animal idioms

### SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

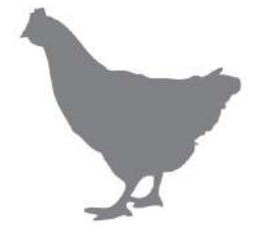
1 Match the names of meat to the correct animals.

(beef mutton poultry veal venison)

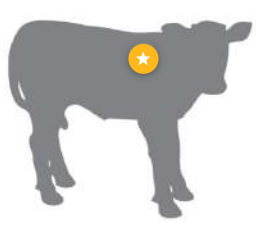


beef

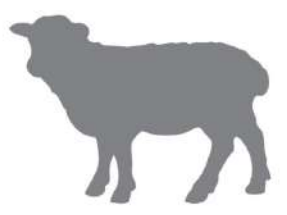
1



2



3



4

2 Solve the puzzle to complete the sentence below.

The average beef cow consumes around twelve kilos of 1 2 3 4 per day.

- The first letter from the word that means a natural or synthetic substance added to soil to help plants grow.
- The last letter from the word that means organic matter mostly derived from animal waste and used to help plants grow.
- The fourth letter from the word that means a substance used to kill cockroaches, flies, wasps, etc.
- The eighth letter of the word that means a substance used to kill or control certain types of plants and animals that are considered to be a nuisance to agricultural crops.

### WORD STORE 9A | Synonyms

3 Complete the text with the correct forms of the words from the box. Use the synonyms in brackets to help you.

boost catastrophic critical  
constitute paramount radical  
remorseless substantial tackling

### The rise and rise of veganism

Not so long ago, the word 'vegan' conjured up images of anaemic-looking, sandal-wearing hippies with radical (extreme) views on animal rights and the <sup>1</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (very harmful) consequences of eating a bacon sandwich on a Sunday morning. But today, thanks to a <sup>2</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (considerable) number of celebrity followers and super-bloggers, veganism has been given a <sup>3</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (increase) and is suddenly a <sup>4</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (essential) element in the neo-glamorous lifestyle. Beyoncé and Jay Z are partners in a vegan food company, while other famous names who wax lyrical about the benefits of their vegan diets include Jared Leto, Joaquin Phoenix, Ellen DeGeneres and Bill Gates. Even sportspeople Venus Williams and Scott Jurek, for whom diet and fitness are <sup>5</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (the most important), have become converts. Proponents claim veganism is effective in <sup>6</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (dealing with) diseases such as diabetes and even cancer, and its <sup>7</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (never ending) rise looks set to continue as the environmental impact of meat production becomes common public knowledge. According to The Vegan Society, the number of vegans in the UK has risen in the last six years from 150,000 to 600,000 which <sup>8</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (makes up) around 1.16% percent of the population.



### WORD STORE 9B | Environmental problems

4 Complete the newspaper headlines. The first letters are given. Use the definitions in brackets to help you.

Consumption (use of a resource, of processed meat linked to increased risk of cancer).

Brazil announces record reduction in tropical 'd' \_\_\_\_\_ (the permanent destruction of forests).

<sup>2</sup>L \_\_\_\_\_ s \_\_\_\_\_ (the part of the farming industry devoted to raising animals) generates €8.6 billion per year in the Netherlands.

UN <sup>3</sup>s \_\_\_\_\_ (being able to be maintained) development goals could transform the world by 2030.

Major players discuss <sup>4</sup>a \_\_\_\_\_ (the industry of farming) merger worth \$2.3 billion.

Remorseless <sup>5</sup>a \_\_\_\_\_ i \_\_\_\_\_ (the use of machinery to make farming more productive) to blame for huge rise in unemployment in southern states.

Why <sup>6</sup>b \_\_\_\_\_ (the variety of kinds of life in an ecosystem) increase due to global warming is not a good thing.

Beijing to adopt world's strictest <sup>7</sup>e \_\_\_\_\_ (gases sent into the air) control standards.

### WORD STORE 9C | Animal idioms

5 Complete the idioms. Some letters are given.

- let sleeping dogs lie
- be l \_\_\_\_\_ e w \_\_\_\_\_ r o \_\_\_\_\_ a duck's b \_\_\_\_\_ k
- a w \_\_\_\_\_ d goose c \_\_\_\_\_ e
- k \_\_\_\_\_ l t \_\_\_\_\_ o birds w \_\_\_\_\_ o \_\_\_\_\_ e s \_\_\_\_\_ e
- s \_\_\_\_\_ t f \_\_\_\_\_ t \_\_\_\_\_ horse's m \_\_\_\_\_ h
- t \_\_\_\_\_ e t \_\_\_\_\_ bull b \_\_\_\_\_ t \_\_\_\_\_ h \_\_\_\_\_ s

6 Match idioms from Exercise 5 to the situations below.

Enough talk! It's time to take practical action and actually do something about climate change. (6)

- I spent hours trying to find and buy the new model online only to find out it's not even available in Europe until next year. ☐
- It wasn't until the boss made the announcement that we realised the rumours had been true. ☐
- My current operating system works just fine so why risk upgrading, even if it's for free? ☐
- I reduced my consumption of plastic and at the same time managed to save over £50 per month. ☐
- I would have been really upset if anyone had spoken to me in that tone, but Nick didn't seem to care at all. ☐

### WORD STORE 9D | EXTRA Animal idioms

7 Choose the correct words to complete the idioms.

- let the rabbit / dog / cat out of the bag
- donkey's / monkey's / elephant's years
- a wolf / tiger / shark in sheep's clothing
- hold your sheep / horses / cows
- pigs / mice / fish might fly

8 Complete the sentences with the idioms from Exercise 7.

- Don't tell Anne any secrets. She can't keep her mouth shut and will almost certainly let the cat out of the bag.
- Damien may look innocent but, believe me, he can be really nasty. He's a \_\_\_\_\_.
  - The brothers have been jokingly sending the very same awful birthday card back and forth to each other for \_\_\_\_\_.
  - Now just \_\_\_\_\_ for a second. Have you got money and is your phone fully charged?
  - Kerry said she might get an 'A' in the exam and, knowing how little revision she's done, I said 'Yeah, and \_\_\_\_\_'. She wasn't very happy.

### SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

9 Cross out one word that is not necessary in each sentence.

- Watch out for the boss. At first she seems friendly but she's actually a wolf dressed in sheep's clothing.
- I firmly believe it's time we took the bull by the two horns and changed the gun control laws.
  - The livestock animal sector has a lot to answer for when it comes to climate change.
  - Yeah, yeah – keep them coming, hater. Your insults are like water running off a duck's back to me.
  - Hold onto your horses for a second my friend; you still owe me €20 from last weekend.
  - It was supposed to be a surprise party, but 'big-mouth' Dan went and let the cat get out of the bag.

10 Choose the best answer A–C to complete the sentences.

- \_\_\_\_\_ measures are needed if we are to succeed in eradicating Ebola altogether.  
A Tackling B Radical C Paramount
- The seven individuals now living in captivity \_\_\_\_\_ the entire remaining population.  
A constitute B boost C sustain
- Melting ice caps have already had the \_\_\_\_\_ effect of all but destroying the polar bear's hunting grounds.  
A biodiversity B catastrophic C remorseless
- \_\_\_\_\_ of timber has already stripped vast swathes of forest from the surface of the Earth.  
A Consumption B Deforestation C Agricultural industrialisation
- Manufacturer's blamed after \_\_\_\_\_ reach record levels causing respiratory difficulties for young and old.  
A boosts B agribusinesses C emissions



READING

9.2

Zero-waste living • phrases  
• collocations



# Taking Out the Trash\*

My name is Lauren Singer. I'm a twenty-three year-old girl living in NYC and I don't make trash. Nada. No garbage bin, no landfill.

I didn't always live what's called a 'zero-waste life', but started making the shift about three years ago while working towards an Environmental Studies degree at New York University. At the time, I had become president of a club that hosted weekly talks on environmental topics. As such, I considered myself a true environmentalist, or as my grandma liked to call me, 'a real tree hugger'. Everyone, including myself, thought of me as the 'sustainability' girl, so obviously, I was doing my best to live a green and sustainable lifestyle, wasn't I?

One night after a class at the university, I went home and started making that night's dinner. And then it happened. I opened my refrigerator, and I froze. Every item was wrapped or packaged, one way or another, in plastic.

In practice, my resolution to do without this ubiquitous substance meant learning to produce all of the products that would have come packaged in it myself. This included everything from toothpaste to cleaning products. I didn't know where to begin, so took to the Internet to search for solutions. While online, I stumbled across a blog called *Zero-Waste Home*, which followed the life of Bea Johnson, wife and mother of two children who all live a zero-waste life in California.

Inspired by what I'd read, I stopped buying packaged products altogether and began bringing my own bags and jars to fill with bulk products at the supermarket. I also stopped buying new clothing, and shopped only second-hand. On top of this, I downsized my possessions significantly by selling, donating, or giving away superfluous\* things such as the ten pairs of jeans that I hadn't worn since high school, and the hordes\* of decorative items to which I felt no attachment.

Of course, the transition didn't happen overnight. The process took more than a year and required lots of small changes, but I'm happy to say it was worth it. Living in a way that aligns with my values has inspired others and improved my life hugely. I spend less time and money shopping, I eat healthy locally-grown produce and I'm proud of what I've achieved, which makes me generally less stressed out and far more content.

I didn't adopt this lifestyle to make a statement; I did it because it is the absolute best way I know to live in a way that aligns with everything I believe in.



- 1 Quickly read the article without the missing paragraphs and number pictures A–D in the order they correspond to the text.
- 2 Read the article again. Match gaps 1–6 with paragraphs A–G. There is one extra paragraph.
- A The realisation that I was equally culpable\* of generating all this unnecessary waste left me feeling like a total hypocrite, and in that revelatory\* moment, feeling like part of the problem, I made the decision to eliminate all plastic from my life.
- B In addition to this clearout, a vital step in my journey towards waste-free living was consciously pre-empting potentially wasteful situations. This involved saying no to things like single use plastics such as straws in my drinks at cafés, and plastic or paper bags at stores.
- C Debatable. In one of my classes at NYU, I had noticed that a fellow student always brought a ton of plastic as part of her meal, and then would throw it all away when finished. This upset me, especially as we were part of an Environmental Studies class. She could have used a paper bag, a reusable box, metal cutlery or a flask to carry her water in.
- D I never anticipated that actively choosing not to produce waste would turn into my having a better quality of life in general. It was just a way to align my day to day life with my values. But what was, at first, a lifestyle decision, then became a blog and has now blossomed into what I hope will prove to be a successful eco-friendly business.
- E In spite of this, I now make a grocery list when I go shopping, which means being prepared and not grabbing expensive items impulsively. Additionally, buying food in bulk means not paying a premium, and when it comes to my wardrobe, I shop second-hand and get my clothes at a heavily discounted price.
- F I know what you're thinking, though. This girl must be a total hippie, or a liar, or the figment of someone's overactive imagination. Well, I assure you, I'm none of those things; in fact I'm basically just your ordinary New York City girl, who made a decision to change the way she lives 'for the greener'.
- G I thought, 'if someone with so many responsibilities can go all the way, then I, as a twenty-one-year-old single girl in NYC, certainly can too.' So, I braced myself for the next logical step in my journey and took the leap from zero-plastic to zero-waste.

- 3 Complete the definitions with the correct form of the phrases in bold from the article.
- If something happens overnight, it occurs very quickly.
- 1 If something is a \_\_\_\_\_, it is not real and is created by someone's mind.
- 2 If you \_\_\_\_\_ something, you find it by accident.
- 3 If you \_\_\_\_\_, you buy something at an unusually high price.
- 4 If you \_\_\_\_\_, you prepare yourself mentally or emotionally for something unpleasant.
- 5 If you \_\_\_\_\_ something, you knowingly take action to prevent something from happening.

## WORD STORE 9E | Collocations

- 4 Complete each pair of sentences with the same answer A–C.
- 1 a If we contributed half as much money as we spend on defence to humanitarian \_\_\_\_\_, much of the world's suffering could be prevented.  
b What \_\_\_\_\_ people to resort to violence rather than negotiation and compromise?  
A affairs      B causes      C aids
- 2 a Due to a problem with the \_\_\_\_\_, the rear wall of the house has sunk into the ground by almost ten centimetres.  
b If you ask me, the world needs more philanthropic \_\_\_\_\_ and fewer marketing agencies that waste time promoting things that nobody really needs.  
A materials      B individuals      C foundations
- 3 a This backward-looking government is determined to build more coal-fired power stations despite the huge environmental \_\_\_\_\_ they have been proved to cause.  
b Should you discover any \_\_\_\_\_ to your product after opening this parcel, please contact our customer services department immediately.  
A problems      B damage      C action
- 4 a I couldn't get the battery cover off and when I tried to \_\_\_\_\_ it, I dropped my phone and smashed the screen.  
b The soldiers killed were actually part of a peacekeeping \_\_\_\_\_ and were not armed at the time they were attacked.  
A force      B mission      C help
- 5 a Intergovernmental \_\_\_\_\_ have been strained since the discovery of vast gold deposits on the border between the two countries.  
b Just once I'd like to spend my winter holidays with you in the mountains, instead of trailing round all the \_\_\_\_\_ as usual.  
A relations      B organisations      C relatives



## GLOSSARY

- take out the trash (AmE) – put the rubbish in the bins outside
- superfluous (adj) – unnecessary, particularly because there are too many of something
- hordes (n) – large numbers of something, especially people in crowds
- culpable (adj) – to blame; guilty
- revelatory (adj) – revealing something previously unknown



9.3

GRAMMAR

Inversion after adverbials

SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

1 Complete the sentences with missing verbs.

A: I never follow long-term weather forecasts as they often prove unreliable. B: Neither does my sister.

- 1 A: We are busy building shelters along the motorway for the motorists stuck in the traffic jam. B: So \_\_\_\_\_ the Red Cross volunteers.
- 2 Her car was blanketed in snow, as \_\_\_\_\_ all the vehicles in her neighbourhood.
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_ I you, I wouldn't hesitate to help with the clear-up operation.
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_ it not been for hundreds of volunteers, the roads would have remained impassable even longer.

2 ★★ Complete the sentences with the phrases from the box. There are three extra phrases.

~~Never before~~ Not for a moment  
Not since Not until Only by  
Only in this way Only then Very rarely

Never before have commuters been faced with such adverse weather conditions.

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_ did we think that the road had not been gritted after the heavy snowfall.
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_ 1869 has such a massive snowstorm been recorded by American meteorologists.
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_ do temperatures surpass 40 degrees Celsius in summer, but when they do, it is always senior citizens that are most likely to be affected.
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_ living here for a few years will you ever get accustomed to the vagaries of the English weather.

3 ★★★ Replace each sentence in the article with inversion. Use the beginnings given.

NOBODY'S SAFE

As soon as the River Thames burst its banks due to heavy rains last Wednesday, floodwater threatened to inundate a local developer's £10 million mansion.

- 1 The developer and his wife bought the 17th century property near Reading, Berkshire only a year ago.
- 2 They were planning to redo its twenty rooms and wanted to redesign the sprawling garden.

Barely had the River Thames burst its banks due to heavy rains last Wednesday when floodwater threatened to inundate a local developer's £10 million mansion.

Only \_\_\_\_\_ the 17th century property near Reading, Berkshire.

Not only \_\_\_\_\_ redesign the sprawling garden.

SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

4 Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first. Use the words in capitals. Use between five and six words in each gap.

Last week transport services were cancelled and many homes were without power. **BUT**  
Last week not only were transport services cancelled, but many homes were also without power.

- 1 That was the first time so many drivers found themselves stranded on motorways blocked by snow. **BEFORE**  
Never \_\_\_\_\_ themselves stranded on motorways blocked by snow.
- 2 It wasn't possible for those orangutangs to escape from raging fires in Borneo last month. **COULD**  
In no \_\_\_\_\_ raging fires in Borneo last month.
- 3 It took New Orleans ten years to recover from the damage caused by Hurricane Katrina. **LATER**  
Not \_\_\_\_\_ New Orleans recover from the damage caused by Hurricane Katrina.
- 4 In case of a tsunami people should reach higher ground on foot, never by car. **CIRCUMSTANCES**  
Under \_\_\_\_\_ ground by car in case of a tsunami, but on foot.
- 5 Victims of the earthquake did not have any idea how big the tremors would be. **REALISE**  
Little \_\_\_\_\_ how big the tremors would be.
- 6 And at that moment we found out that it had been the second highest snowfall on record. **THEN**  
Only \_\_\_\_\_ it had been the second highest snowfall on record.

/6

- 3 The Environment Agency has warned that low-lying areas should not be considered safe at all for the next few days. **In no way** \_\_\_\_\_ safe for the next few days.
- 4 Local residents have been advised that they must not ignore the latest flood alerts. **On no account** \_\_\_\_\_ the latest flood alerts.
- 5 They should not underestimate the power of the river as even thirty cm of flowing water is sufficient to move a car. **Under no circumstances** \_\_\_\_\_ the power of the river as even thirty cm of flowing water is sufficient to move a car.
- 6 As of yet the developer has not commented on the situation. **At no time** \_\_\_\_\_ on the situation.



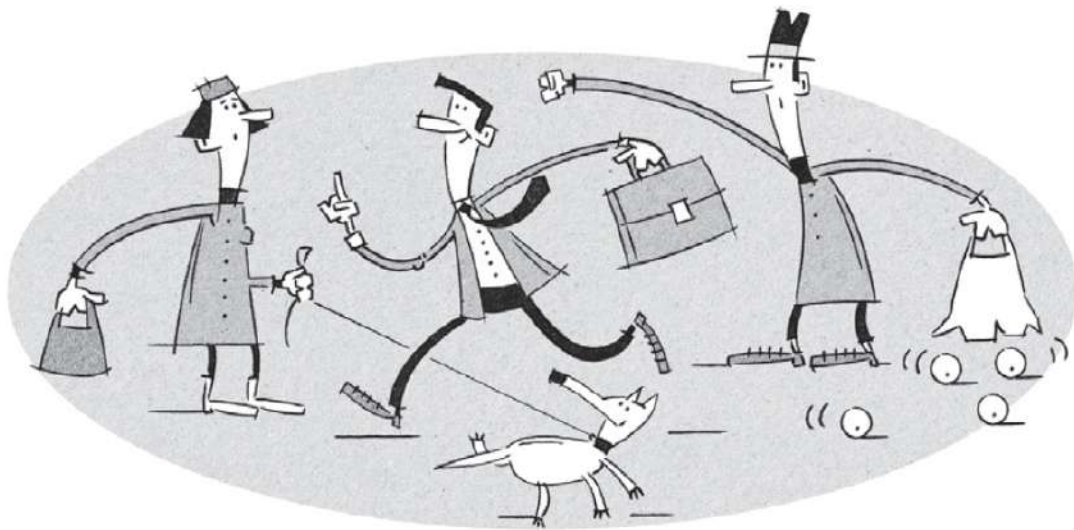
9.4

USE OF ENGLISH

Extra it

1 Choose the correct option.

- 1 My mother doesn't like it *that / if / where* some public transport users stand with their rucksacks on their back, especially on overcrowded trams, bashing or leaning on other passengers.
- 2 I would appreciate it *that / when / if* other passengers didn't plant their bags on the seat next to them on a busy bus.
- 3 I think it bothersome *to see / if I see / when I see* individuals who stop in front of the ticket gates fishing around in their pockets for their travel cards.
- 4 The elderly who use public transport *take / owe / find* it frustrating when young passengers don't give up their seat when they see them.
- 5 When I'm running late and need to catch an underground train quickly, I find it particularly annoying *where / that / if* so many people stand on the left on escalators and block the path.



I find it impossible to slow down.

2 Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first. Use the words in capitals. Use between three and six words in each gap.

I would be grateful if you could refrain from looking at your smartphone when you're walking across the street. **APPRECIATE**

I *would appreciate it* if you could refrain from looking at your smartphone when you're walking across the street.

- 1 We don't think politicians ought to decide on a sensible course of action. **LEAVE**  
Let's \_\_\_\_\_ decide on a sensible course of action.
- 2 It is considered necessary by the school staff that all students familiarise themselves with the code of conduct before going on any field trip. **NECESSITY**  
The school staff \_\_\_\_\_ all students familiarise themselves with the code of conduct before going on any field trip.
- 3 I assume you know you are expected to let others get off the tram or a bus before trying to get on. **TAKE**  
I \_\_\_\_\_ you know you are expected to let others get off the tram or a bus before trying to get on.
- 4 The mayor feels grateful to his voters so he will make sure the new laws contribute to their well-being. **OWES**  
The mayor \_\_\_\_\_ make sure that the new laws contribute to their well-being.

3 Complete the dialogue with the correct form of the words in brackets necessary. Add any words necessary.

- T: Just when I thought nothing could surprise me any more, this happens.
- A: What is it, Toby? I would *appreciate it if you told* (you/tell) me what shocked you so much.
- T: Oh, I'm referring to this revolutionary idea of a shopping centre in Liverpool. You'll love it <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (they/just/open) Britain's first ever fast lane for pedestrians.
- A: They did what?
- T: You heard me, Ann. Apparently people find it annoying <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (have to) elbow their way through crowds when they're doing shopping or rushing somewhere.
- A: Story of my life! I absolutely hate it <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (dawdlers/stand) in my way when I'm in a hurry, don't you?
- T: Well, yeah, they make me late too, but don't you consider it far-fetched <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (they/introduce) this solution in a shopping centre where people are supposed to relax? Anyway, how are they going to stop slow walkers from using the fast lane? I'm not so sure it will solve the problem of pavement hoppers.
- A: I beg to differ. To be honest, I think it strange <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (nobody/come) up with this idea before. I wonder if other cities will follow suit. So when are we heading to Liverpool?

SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

4 Complete the text with one word in each gap.

Like many people, I really *hate* it when modern life pushes me to go faster than I feel comfortable going. I would really <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ it if I could take the time to enjoy the natural rhythm of life. I think we <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ it to ourselves to take more time and care in our daily lives and, as I believe in the principles of the SLOW movement, I try to let the concepts of Sustainable, Local, Organic and Whole guide me. Why should we <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ it to the forces of marketing to decide how we live? Don't you find <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ annoying that the pressures to make money rule your life? Of course it is hard <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ accept that everything may not be driven by personal choice, but anybody can make a conscious effort to slow down. I love <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ when I see people growing their own food, because it reassures me that we can still choose how we affect the planet we live on.





LISTENING LANGUAGE PRACTICE

Verb forms • informal phrases with come • verbs

1 Read the recording extract. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form.

Extract from Student's Book recording 3.27

K: Hi everyone – I'm Kathy Thomas and I'm here to tell you about my participation last year in an on-going project monitoring wolves in a US national park. [...] First *I'll give* (give) you some background. Years ago, wolves living in the park <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (simply/see) as predators and a decision <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (make/eradicate) them. I wish scientists <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (understand) then how this would upset the natural balance of the area. [...] But lessons <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (learn), and in the mid-1990s, wolves <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (reintroduce) into the park. As a result, the elk <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (leave) the valleys and the trees flourished again. The beavers returned, encouraging new ecosystems – predictably these <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (include) fish, otters and ducks in the rivers, and mice and rabbits on the land, which provided food for foxes. I <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (not/expect) there <sup>9</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (be) such a large variety of birds, though. So it's clear why the wolves <sup>10</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (need/monitor), and that's where we volunteers come in.

2 Look at some common phrases with the verb come. Complete the definitions by adding the missing words from the box. Use a dictionary if necessary.

bridge head nowhere  
wall where worst

that's *where* somebody comes in – the point that somebody becomes involved

- 1 cross that \_\_\_\_\_ when we come to it – wait for a situation or problem to occur before trying to solve it
- 2 if the \_\_\_\_\_ comes to the worst – if a situation develops in the most negative way
- 3 come up against a brick \_\_\_\_\_ – be unable to progress because something or somebody is stopping you
- 4 come out of \_\_\_\_\_ – appear unexpectedly
- 5 come to a \_\_\_\_\_ – to reach a critical state when a decision or act needs to be taken



3 Complete the sentences with an appropriate come phrase from Exercise 2. Sometimes you need to change the form. There may be more than one possibility.

The threat to the Forest of Dean has become imminent. We need to take a stand and show how much we oppose the proposed changes. And that's *where we/you come in* as we'll need as many bodies as possible for a sit-down protest!

- 1 The government's attitude seems to be very much one that there's no imminent danger to the ozone layer and if it does become critical, they will simply \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 There's really no point in worrying about that now. We'll have to agree that \_\_\_\_\_, we'll take a stand and stick together.
- 3 The disagreement between landowners and farmers has \_\_\_\_\_ and the authorities will need to intervene to stop things turning ugly.
- 4 Due to escalating costs, the threat of legal action and fact that the media have now turned their attention elsewhere, it seems that we have \_\_\_\_\_ that no one can see a way round.
- 5 We were walking across this field and then, all of sudden, a herd of buffalo \_\_\_\_\_ and started charging towards us. I've never been so scared in my life.

WORD STORE 9F | Verbs

4 Use the verbs below in the correct forms to complete the text.

eradicate factor in flourish monitor  
reintroduce stagger upset

It's very *upsetting* to read that the first mammal has been driven to extinction due to human-caused climate change. The Bramble Cay melomys, also known as the mosaic-tailed rat, was only found on a small island off the coast of Queensland, Australia. The existence of the rodent had been <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ since it was first discovered in 1845. Whilst initially found in very high numbers, researchers were <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ to find the population had dropped to only several hundred by 1978.

Rising sea levels flooded the island and destroyed the habitat of the animals which were no longer able to <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ as they had done in the past. Now, when they are officially classed as 'extinct', it is clearly impossible to <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ a species that has been forever wiped out. And when the numbers of other species on the edge of survival are <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_, we have to wonder how many other life forms will be inadvertently <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ before we can reverse the effects of climate change.



9.6

SPEAKING

Speculating about photos

1 Complete the extracts from descriptions of photographs with the words from the box. There are two extra words.

admittedly assume bound envisage might  
must potentially tentatively wouldn't

The girls look identical in this photo, and it hasn't been airbrushed, so they must be twins. There's no other explanation.

- 1 I \_\_\_\_\_ this is a nature reserve of some sort because it's extremely unusual to see so many large animals together in such a relatively small space.
- 2 I could be wrong, but I \_\_\_\_\_ think that they are enjoying themselves. They look cold, wet and tired and that's certainly not my idea of a good time.
- 3 I can \_\_\_\_\_ how it must feel to be weightless and to float around in space like the astronaut in the picture, but I don't suppose I will ever get the chance to actually experience it for myself.
- 4 The picture paints an idealistic image of life in the country but in reality, it's \_\_\_\_\_ to have its downsides and frustrations.
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_, this wouldn't be to everyone's taste, but to me it looks like a great way to spend a holiday.
- 6 I can't be certain, but \_\_\_\_\_, I'd say the woman in the picture is some kind of doctor or veterinarian.

2 Complete the first part of the description. The first letters are given.

These two images show differing visions of the future. Photo A has an almost nightmarish quality to it, and is probably somewhat far-fetched, whereas image B looks more realistic to me. I <sup>1</sup>p\_\_\_\_\_ t\_\_\_\_\_ the planet we see in the sky is Earth, meaning that this place <sup>2</sup>c\_\_\_\_\_ be a settlement on a space station, though we can't <sup>3</sup>r\_\_\_\_\_ o\_\_\_\_\_ the p\_\_\_\_\_ that the landscape is on Earth itself, in a future where it <sup>4</sup>w\_\_\_\_\_ a\_\_\_\_\_ nature has died out and only elaborate machines can keep us alive. It's not completely clear what the message of the image might be, but I <sup>5</sup>s\_\_\_\_\_ that it's a comment on human beings' impact on our planet. Though <sup>6</sup>u\_\_\_\_\_ to actually happen to this degree, perhaps, the idea is that we have left Earth uninhabitable, and that we might be doomed to repeat the same mistakes on other planets. Judging by how bad we are as a race at learning from our mistakes, I'd say that this is quite <sup>7</sup>l\_\_\_\_\_.

3 Choose the correct words to complete the second half of the description. In one case both words are possible.

In comparison to image A, image B presents a rather more coherent and positive view of the future, in my opinion. Clear skies and vegetation <sup>1</sup>suggest / appear that environmental problems <sup>2</sup>must / may well have been brought under control. There's an interesting contrast between the traditional house in the foreground and the futuristic city in the background. There's also a telephone mast, which is <sup>3</sup>tentatively / presumably obsolete, as I very much <sup>4</sup>doubt / envisage that we'll be using cables to carry communication signals in the future. It would <sup>5</sup>seem / imagine that there are flying vehicles of some sort hovering over the city. I don't know <sup>6</sup>if / whether this is a realistic vision of the future, but it is <sup>7</sup>definitely / likely more appealing and more believable than the one presented in image A.





9.7

WRITING

Essay introductions

- 1 Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first. Use the words in capitals.
- 1 Nowadays, extreme weather events seem to be happening more frequently. **DAYS**  
*These days extreme weather events* seem to be happening more frequently.

2 My own stance on the matter is that the billionaire's comments prove he is a serious threat to world peace. **INCLINATION**  
It \_\_\_\_\_ the billionaire's comments prove he is a serious threat to world peace.

3 While some people insist it is their right to own a weapon, others believe that guns should be banned. **CRITICS**  
Supporters argue \_\_\_\_\_ believe that guns should be banned.

4 Clearly, what to do about racism in contemporary Europe is a complicated issue. **COMPLEX**  
The \_\_\_\_\_ one.

5 There is considerable debate as to whether veganism is a healthy lifestyle choice for children. **CONTROVERSY**  
There is a \_\_\_\_\_ the issue of veganism as a healthy lifestyle choice for children.

6 Most people believe domestic robots are destined to become more numerous in the coming decades. **ACKNOWLEDGED**  
\_\_\_\_\_ are destined to become more numerous in the coming decades.
- 2 Complete the tips on writing essay introductions with a word from the box. There are two extra words. Then match the sentences from Exercise 1 to each tip.
- agree approaches controversial justify opposing own recent

Summarise the current or *recent* situation. 1

1 Make a general point that most people would \_\_\_\_\_ with. ☐

2 State that the issue is complicated, \_\_\_\_\_ or causes disagreement. ☐ & ☐

3 Summarise \_\_\_\_\_ views on the issue. ☐

4 Summarise your \_\_\_\_\_ opinion at the end of the introduction (opinion essay) ☐



- 3 Complete the introduction to an essay. The first letters are given.

It is widely *acknowledged* that businesses have been reducing their number of employees for decades. In <sup>1</sup>r\_\_\_\_\_y\_\_\_\_\_, automation has made it increasingly possible to perform tasks with machines. Not <sup>2</sup>e\_\_\_\_\_a\_\_\_\_\_ that automation is a positive step, and there is no <sup>3</sup>s\_\_\_\_\_a\_\_\_\_\_ when it comes to p\_\_\_\_\_erving jobs. <sup>4</sup>W\_\_\_\_\_ some people argue that this change is unavoidable, <sup>5</sup>o\_\_\_\_\_c\_\_\_\_\_ that retraining workers could keep everyone employed. My <sup>6</sup>o\_\_\_\_\_v\_\_\_\_\_ of the matter is that governments and businesses must cooperate to find a solution.

- 4 Choose the correct words and phrases to complete the rest of the essay.

Without *a* / no doubt, there are substantial arguments both for and against self-service shopping. <sup>1</sup>To begin with / In the beginning, it would seem that most of the advantages are on the side of the **retailers**, and that customers and job-seekers pay the price for the store's savings. At the other <sup>2</sup>end / side of the spectrum, **proponents** argue that cost savings are passed on to customers, and that many shoppers love the speed and convenience of self-service.

Looking at the advantages, there are several which apply to both businesses and customers. <sup>3</sup>Firstly / Then, businesses can reduce labour costs while offering less waiting time for customers. <sup>4</sup>However / Furthermore, customers who are comfortable with the technology enjoy the independence and speed of self-service. <sup>5</sup>On the other hand / Moreover, if service jobs in stores were eliminated, everyone would be freer, <sup>6</sup>meaning / due to customers could shop at their own pace, and young people could pursue meaningful careers instead of being **stuck** at a cash register.

<sup>7</sup>Never mind / On the flipside, there are arguments against self-service shopping both for retailers and customers. <sup>8</sup>Then / Firstly, the substantial expense of installing and maintaining the technology is a huge **hurdle** for businesses. <sup>9</sup>Additionally / Unless, there is an increase in complaints from shoppers who dislike having to serve themselves, not to mention an increase in (sometimes accidental) thefts. <sup>10</sup>However / Furthermore, considering that many shoppers are confused and **intimidated** by new technology, and that young people already have trouble finding entry-level jobs, the arguments against self-service shopping have a lot of weight behind them.

<sup>11</sup>All things considered / No matter, there are persuasive arguments on both sides. And while it seems **inevitable** that increasing numbers of machines will replace humans, I believe that every chance to provide personal service to customers should be **seized upon**, since personal interactions are a part of what keeps us truly human.

- 5 Complete the definitions with the words in bold from the model.

- retailers* – businesses which sell directly to customers
- 1 \_\_\_\_\_ – made to feel afraid or not capable of doing sth
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_ – unable to be stopped or avoided
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_ – unable to escape from a bad or boring situation
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_ – supporters
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_ – a problem or difficulty to be overcome; also, the frames over which athletes jump during a race
- 6 \_\_\_\_\_ – take advantage of

- 6 Complete the text with the words and phrases from the box.

another step as well as even so first no matter on balance this means unless whether

Home | Search | Contact www.haveyoursay.org

Have your say – this week's topic: environment

Gavin404 writes ...

World Environment Day is celebrated globally to remind us of our impact on the environment *as well as* the things we can do to protect it. How can individuals most effectively contribute to solving environmental problems? <sup>1</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ what age we are, there are various ways in which we can all contribute.

<sup>2</sup>\_\_\_\_\_, we need to respect life and renew our bond with nature. <sup>3</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ recognising that all living things have a right to live on this planet. <sup>4</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ there is respect for nature, there will be no desire to protect it. <sup>5</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ we can take is to influence the organisation we belong to, <sup>6</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ it is a school or a company, to be more environmentally friendly.

<sup>7</sup>\_\_\_\_\_, I believe the best way for individuals to help protect the environment is by spreading the environmental message. Of course, it can be difficult to persuade others of the importance of environmental issues. <sup>8</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ it is important to make that effort.

SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

- 7 Read the writing task. Then follow the instructions below.

As artificial intelligence advances, the prospect of machines that can think, feel and operate independently is becoming more of a reality. Though they would be designed to make our lives easier, such machines may also present a danger to the human race. Write an essay in which you present your opinion on the topic. In your essay discuss the following aspects:

- the ways in which AI machines might make life easier.
- the dangers that AI machines could present.
- potential solutions to these dangers.

- 1 Read the task carefully. Have you read any books, seen any films or played any games that deal with this topic? What viewpoints were presented there?
- 2 Make notes under each of the three bullet points in the task.
- 3 Decide what your overall opinion on the topic is. To what extent do you agree that AI machines pose a threat to the human race?
- 4 Write your introduction using a selection of the techniques mentioned in Exercise 2.
- 5 Look at your notes and organise the points into two or three main body paragraphs.
- 6 Consider the linkers you will use to join your ideas.
- 7 Write your essay.

SHOW THAT YOU'VE CHECKED

Finished? Always check your writing (especially in the exam!) Can you tick ✓ everything on this list?

In my essay:	
• in the introduction, I have used two or three of the techniques mentioned in Exercise 2 p. 108 (see also Writing Focus in Student's Book p. 109 for more details).	<input type="checkbox"/>
• in the main body paragraphs, I have presented points relating to all three bullet points from the task.	<input type="checkbox"/>
• I have used linkers to join my ideas in a logical way.	<input type="checkbox"/>
• in the conclusion I have summarised my main points, stated my overall opinion and finished with a point for the reader to think about.	<input type="checkbox"/>
• I have used a formal and impersonal style.	<input type="checkbox"/>
• I have checked my spelling.	<input type="checkbox"/>
• I have checked my handwriting is neat enough for someone else to read.	<input type="checkbox"/>



9.8

SELF-CHECK

VOCABULARY

1 Complete the sentences with the verbs from the box in the correct form. There is one extra verb.

boost   cheapen   eradicate  
put   tackle   take   upset

The government's goal is to eradicate poverty in the next five years with international help.

- Nutritionists are trying to \_\_\_\_\_ the amount of fresh fruit and vegetables consumed in school canteens.
- The good food which is served here will really \_\_\_\_\_ this vegan restaurant on the map in no time.
- If illegal fishing is not \_\_\_\_\_ soon, there'll be no fish left in our ponds.
- It needs to be assessed whether the new fish species will \_\_\_\_\_ the natural balance of the region or not.
- Poor marketing of organic products made in our company can seriously \_\_\_\_\_ the brand.

/5

2 Complete the sentences with the correct words. First letters are given.

It is said more needs to be done to raise the profile of organisations fighting against poachers.

- It seems that d \_\_\_\_\_ occurs all over the world but tropical rainforests are particularly targeted.
- A: I think very soon cars will run on water.  
B: Yeah, and p \_\_\_\_\_ might fly!
- The need to combat global warming is p \_\_\_\_\_ since increasing temperatures make sea levels rise.
- Looking for the woman you saved during the tsunami is a wild g \_\_\_\_\_ chase when you don't know her name.
- Instead of supporting large-scale international a \_\_\_\_\_ companies, why not involve local farms into the production and distribution of their produce?

/5

3 Choose the correct answer.

When considering whether to become a vegetarian, everybody should first factor / account / hinder in such things as their general health and the availability of fresh produce. My family have been into vegetarianism for <sup>1</sup>donkey's / sheep's / dog's years and we've never had any problems or side effects.

Some vegetarians, including my mother, choose to eat fish because they believe fishing doesn't impact on land use. My sister is so committed she doesn't even drink milk, but my father eats a(n) <sup>2</sup>staggered / essential / substantial number of eggs, which provide enough protein. With a high level of agricultural <sup>3</sup>awareness / consumption / industrialisation, the only option for me is to become a fruitarian and buy local produce.

Generally, it is <sup>4</sup>consecutive / critical / sustainable to pay attention to the benefits and risks of any diet before deciding to follow it. I believe it is wiser to hear about the choice someone has made straight from the <sup>5</sup>cat's / horse's / duck's mouth rather than criticise such options straight away.

/5

GRAMMAR

4 Correct the mistakes in the sentences.

~~Little we realise~~ the full extent of the forest fire until a survey of it had been completed. Little did we realise

- Not there was only a flower display but the organisers had also presented a large grass collection. \_\_\_\_\_
- No sooner had the baby elephant been trapped in a bog when it started raining heavily. \_\_\_\_\_
- Under any circumstances the zookeeper is allowed to enter a lion's cage without a tranquiliser gun. \_\_\_\_\_
- Only after did they examine the soil did they find out the possible source of contamination. \_\_\_\_\_
- At any point you're to leave the jeep when we're driving through the game park. \_\_\_\_\_

/5

5 Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first.

Marion didn't seek any medical help for her injuries at any time as she was living in the wild then.

At no time did Marion seek any medical help for her injuries as she was living in the wild then.

- Mandy did a course in aromatherapy and also became qualified in the therapeutic uses of essential oils.  
Not only \_\_\_\_\_
- My family didn't know that it would be so hard to clear the debris after a tornado went through our village.  
Little \_\_\_\_\_
- Tom only began to relax once he left the farm as he couldn't stand the conditions the animals were kept in.  
Only once \_\_\_\_\_
- The children finished building the sandcastle moments before it was washed away by a wave.  
Hardly \_\_\_\_\_
- After Julian's parents noticed the benefits of having a cat at home, they let their son finally have one.  
Not until \_\_\_\_\_

/5

6 Complete the sentences with the words in brackets in the correct form. Do not change the word order. Use between five and six words in each gap.

We all like it when children treat (like/children/treat) animals with respect and consideration.

- I'm sure my sister \_\_\_\_\_ (not/find/easy) to be a vegetarian as she's never liked vegetables.
- Environmentalists in our town \_\_\_\_\_ (appreciate/they/receive) new premises, but apparently there are no available ones at the moment.
- Most people \_\_\_\_\_ (leave/local/authority) to decide how often to collect rubbish.
- Colin really \_\_\_\_\_ (hate/I/keep/criticise) his attitude towards saving water.
- My grandparents love nature and \_\_\_\_\_ (consider/advantage/live) in the country.

/5

Total /30

USE OF ENGLISH

7 Complete the text with the correct form of the words in brackets.

Deforestation

Forests are complex ecosystems with a connection (connect) to almost every species. Deforestation means the permanent <sup>1</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (destroy) of forests, which is done to create land for agriculture or to provide energy. Methods used include burning or cutting down trees, but these techniques are <sup>2</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (controversy) because of the damage they cause. Both have been practised for centuries, but recently there has been a rapid acceleration in their use to unprecedented levels. What deforestation does is set off a <sup>3</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (remorse) chain of events not only locally but globally. It's considered a major factor in climate change, and it affects the growth of vegetation. The rapid disappearance of natural habitats leads to the extinction of some species and creates unbalanced ecosystems, which contributes to general loss of <sup>4</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (biodiverse) of living organisms. With allegedly roughly 75,000 square kilometres lost annually through deforestation, we need to act now, engaging <sup>5</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (government) organisations, so that we tackle this problem on a global level. We have to think about future generations and <sup>6</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (sustain) development which does not cause severe ecological damage.

/6

8 Choose the correct answer A, B, C or D.

When it comes to environmental issues, a lot of people are willing to support good C, especially those that involve cutting down on the use of <sup>1</sup>\_\_\_ fuels. People also seek out lifestyle changes that are both cheap and environmentally friendly. Luckily, it needn't be a hard grind nor does it have to <sup>2</sup>\_\_\_ such serious problems. Consider our use of cars – apart from any financial advantages, choosing to walk or cycle instead offers <sup>3</sup>\_\_\_ increased health benefits.

I feel strongly about being a green consumer. This means before I buy anything, I evaluate the potential <sup>4</sup>\_\_\_ done by its packaging, production or transport, then choose the product with the lowest environmental impact and definitely give items with excessive carbon footprint a wide <sup>5</sup>\_\_\_. If enough people did this, manufacturers would <sup>6</sup>\_\_\_ action to remedy the situation. Only if more is done to shine a <sup>7</sup>\_\_\_ on such issues, will anything change.

Maybe it's a <sup>8</sup>\_\_\_ of highlighting the implications of not looking after our environment.

- |                  |              |               |              |
|------------------|--------------|---------------|--------------|
| A beliefs        | B purposes   | C causes      | D objects    |
| 1 A fossil       | B prey       | C insecticide | D flock      |
| 2 A slash        | B flee       | C threat      | D pose       |
| 3 A considerably | B absolutely | C totally     | D completely |
| 4 A hurt         | B injury     | C damage      | D loss       |
| 5 A miss         | B berth      | C break       | D hand       |
| 6 A have         | B make       | C do          | D take       |
| 7 A lamp         | B spotlight  | C torch       | D indicator  |
| 8 A question     | B reason     | C motive      | D task       |

/8

9 Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first. Use the words in capitals. Use between three and six words in each gap.

If you think you could combat the problem of rats in the houses by the river, I'd be most obliged.

APPRECIATE

I would appreciate it if you could combat the problem of rats in the houses by the river.

- They had no idea how bad the weather was going to get. **KNOW**  
Little \_\_\_\_\_ the weather was going to get so much worse.
- Knowing Jeremy, he will not leave the issue alone and investigate the accident fully, which may cause him much more trouble. **SLEEPING**  
Jeremy \_\_\_\_\_ but instead will want to investigate the accident in full.
- It was pure luck that they missed the worst of the volcanic eruption. **CHANCE**  
Only \_\_\_\_\_ the worst of the volcanic eruption.
- The authorities believe a dam on the river should be built to protect the Old City from flooding. It's crucial and should be done as soon as possible. **CONSIDER**  
The authorities \_\_\_\_\_ a dam on the river as soon as possible to protect the Old City from flooding.
- We weren't able to devote more time to their project until we finished ours. **UNTIL**  
Not \_\_\_\_\_ we able to devote more time to theirs.
- When the vet comes, ask him to check the cattle and also vaccinate our dogs against rabies. It'll save us a separate trip to the surgery. **KILL**  
Why don't we \_\_\_\_\_ and get the vet to check the cattle and also vaccinate our dogs against rabies.

/6

Total /20